



UNIT 11

"THERE" - TENSES - MODALS

"THERE"

*There is no other animal that blushes except man.
Or needs to.*

Mark Twain

CHANGES IN PARTS OF SPEECH

ADJECTIVE/ADVERB/VERB

- They were severely critical of his comment.
- They strongly disapproved of her behaviour.
- Crime has risen significantly.
- They bitterly resent tourists.
- They have grossly distorted the facts.

THERE + BE + ADJECTIVE + NOUN

- ⇒ There was severe criticism of his comment.
- ⇒ There was strong disapproval of her behaviour.
- ⇒ There has been a significant rise in crime.
- ⇒ There is bitter resentment towards tourists.
- ⇒ There has been a gross distortion of the facts.

VERB CHANGES

- There was a riot in Parliament Square. ⇒ A riot occurred in Parliament Square.
- There hasn't been an election for three years. ⇒ The last time an election was held was three years ago.
- There were no objections from the prosecution. ⇒ No objections were raised by the prosecution.
- There were no fewer than 200 people at the lecture. ⇒ No fewer than 200 people attended the lecture.

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

- You can have as much/many as you like. ⇒ There is no limit (as) to how much/many you can have.
- Three houses have been burgled. ⇒ There have been three houses burgled.
- We don't know what time they'll be here. ⇒ There is no telling/saying/knowing what time they'll be here.
- That story is not true. ⇒ There is no truth in that story.
- It's impossible to find him. ⇒ There is no possibility of finding him.
- It seems/happens that there is... ⇒ There seems/happens to be...
- What I hate most is laziness. ⇒ There's nothing I hate more than laziness.
- Not many people attended the meeting. ⇒ There was a poor turnout for/at the meeting.
- We have looked everywhere. ⇒ There is nowhere we have not looked.
- Ghosts do not exist. ⇒ There is no such thing as ghosts.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. What Anna hates most about these school reunions is posing for photographs. *There's nothing...*
2. The price of a litre of petrol is going up by two pence from midnight tomorrow. *There's...*
3. The planners and the public bitterly disagree over the new motorway route. *There...*
4. Support for the party has risen dramatically this year. *There has been...*
5. This year more foreign language assistants are coming to teach in Britain. *There is...*
6. The protest has been so vociferous that the committee has had to reconsider. *There has been...*

TENSE CHANGES

- THIS/IT IS - THAT/IT WAS the first, second... time + present perfect/past/past perfect
- THIS/IT IS THE LAST TIME + present/future
- THAT/IT WAS THE LAST TIME + past
- IT IS/HAS BEEN... SINCE + past/pr. perfect
- LAST/THE LAST TIME... WAS...
- HAVE NOT... SINCE/FOR
- IT WAS ONLY WHEN/AFTER... THAT...
- IT WAS NOT UNTIL (AFTER)/BEFORE... THAT...
- UNTIL/BEFORE... + past perfect
- WHEN WAS/DID...? ⇒ HOW LONG (AGO)...?
- HOW LONG IS IT/HAS IT BEEN SINCE...?

- It was the first time she had been to Scotland.
- This is the last time I ('ll) tell you.
- That was the last time she saw him alive.
- It is/has been a fortnight since it (has/last) rained.
- I last had a swim two years ago.
- The last time I had a swim was two years ago.
- They have not performed that ballet for three years.
- It was only when/after he explained that I understood.
- It was not until (after) I got home that I remembered.
- Until she was fifteen, Jenny had never been on a train.
- When was the last time you ate fish?
- ⇒ How long ago did you last eat fish?
- ⇒ How long is it/has it been since you last ate fish?



GRAMMAR ANALYSIS



MODALS

EXPRESSING...

DOUBT

- For all I know, he may/might (not)...
- I doubt whether...
- It's doubtful that/whether...
- It's not sure/certain that...
- It's open to question/doubt/speculation whether...
- We can't be sure that...
- They will/would hardly have finished by now.
- I have doubts/(my) reservations about/as to...
- cast doubt on...
- raise doubts about...
- give rise to doubt (about/as to...)
- in doubt

OBLIGATION

- We must/have to/are to...
- You are supposed to...
- It is your duty/job to...
- be obliged/required to...
- be under/have an/no obligation to...
- You ought to/should know/have known better than to...

ADVISABILITY

- It might be best (not) to...
- You'd be better off (not) to...
- We had better (not)...

MODALS: OTHER USES

• DEDUCTION/ASSUMPTION

• SURPRISE/DISBELIEF

• ANNOYANCE

• IRONY

• UNREALISED PAST EVENT

• (UN)WILLINGNESS

• INSISTENCE/BEHAVIOUR

- You needn't buy/have bought...
- You would do/have done well/better to...
- You should know/have known better than to...
- The first/last thing you should do/have done is/was to...

- Don't phone the office - he will/would have left by now.
- You must have been travelling very fast.
- He can't have crashed the car again!
- It's strange that you should say/have said that.
- You could/might have phoned to say you weren't coming.
- I spent hours waiting. I might/should have known he would be late.
- You might/could have hurt yourself.
- She needed help, and I couldn't have refused.
- Why won't you listen to me?/The tape won't rewind.

CERTAINTY

- They can't know/must know...
- They can't have known/must have known...
- They couldn't possibly have known...
- They're sure/bound/certain to know/have known...
- There is no way (that) they could have known...
- It's impossible for them to have known...
- There is no doubt/question/denying that...
- There is no doubt about it/that...
- Without a doubt... • Beyond (all) doubt...
- Beyond a/all shadow of a doubt...
- There is no/little chance/prospect/hope/likelihood of/that...

POSSIBILITY/PROBABILITY

- They may/might go/be going...
- They may/might have gone/have been going...
- It's (highly) likely that...
- The chances are that...
- In all likelihood/probability...
- I wouldn't be surprised if...
- There is no/little possibility that/of... + -ing

ORAL PRACTICE

1. It's out of the question that Harvey took the money. *Harvey...*
2. Perhaps you did not read the enclosed instructions properly. *You...*
3. I assume he's forgotten their anniversary, as usual. *He's...*
4. I'm not sure that his account of what happened is true. *I have my...*
5. There's a chance that my sister is moving to France. *My sister...*
6. I think the last thing we should do is tell her. *We'd...*
7. It's unlikely that United will win the championship. *United will...*
8. It's not sure whether the jury will believe his story. *It's open...*
9. There's no way they had any knowledge of the affair. *They...*
10. It's Sarah's job to file all departmental invoices. *Sarah is...*



"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- These low-lying areas are constantly threatened by flooding. (*being*)
There is a flooded.
- Under no circumstances should you phone the police. (*last*)
The the police.
- The ship certainly won't dock before 11.30. (*possibility*)
There before 11.30.
- Neither of them knows the facts, I imagine. (*whether*)
I the facts.
- Interest rates have fallen again this year. (*drop*)
There again this year.
- It is not certain that Jones will get the job. (*open*)
It is the job.
- My daughter has been healthier since she gave up smoking. (*improvement*)
There since she gave up smoking.
- The number of students entering university has gone up this year. (*in*)
There the number of students entering university.
- This new record is certain to sell a lot of copies. (*doubt*)
Beyond a sell a lot of copies.
- The chances are that the whole thing will have been forgotten by next term. (*all*)
In forgotten by next term.

DERIVATIVES

A POPULATION IN NEED

The (0)..... *unimaginable* severity of the winter has imposed hardship on the population and the threat of (1)..... faces thousands of families, who are unfortunately already suffering from (2)..... wars and depression.

The (3)..... of any responsible government means there is no one to assume control and put rescue plans into (4)..... There is also a chronic lack of information to guide (5)..... international organisations as to where they should concentrate their efforts. Much (6)..... has been put on the UN to find a(n) (7)..... solution to this urgent problem, and they, once again, have come under criticism for their apparent (8)..... to act fast enough. Every moment the delay (9)..... the lives of the local people, the (10)..... of whom simply cannot look after themselves.

IMAGINE
STARVE
END
ABSENT
OPERATE
POWER
PRESS
SATISFY
ABLE
DANGER
MAJOR



USE OF ENGLISH



GUIDED CLOZE TEST: FILL IN

GOOD NEWS IS NO NEWS

Everyone knows that news consists (0)..... *of*..... a selective focus (1)..... the more important and unusual occurrences of the day, yet people are (2)..... misled into mistaking it (3)..... a true and balanced perception of reality. Press and television journalists realise the problem but cannot envisage an effective solution. After all, they argue, nobody (4)..... to be told that a million passengers enter and leave the main London railway termini (5)..... day. If, (6)..... the other hand, (7)..... is a strike or a fire in a signal box as a result of (8)..... trains are cancelled or delayed, that is news. Editors have to (9)..... newspapers, and most British readers are not interested (10)..... the success of Tanzania's sisal crop, or the marital bliss of British couples. If, (11)....., one couple decided to (12)..... their feelings with arsenic or hatchets, that would be news! We can sympathise, but it leaves us with a puzzling consequence of an obvious premise: that, since only the exceptional and (13)..... interesting are worth reporting, the world presented to us appears to be a bizarre, violent place, with television pictures to illustrate it, even though not all reality is pictorial. The (14)..... of television is biased towards the visible and what moves, and this can lead to distortion by generalising the misconduct of a minority of society, whereas in (15)..... the majority act with uneventful restraint.

0. in / at / of / on

1. for / to / on / at

2. easy / ease / easily / eased

3. in / for / at / on

4. must / needs / have / should

5. every / all / whole / during

6. to / on / at / in

7. it / there / happens / because

8. that / there / which / it

9. read / edit / develop / sell

10. for / to / on / in

11. although / however / despite / so

12. express / say / tell / state

13. an / some / all / the

14. way / medium / means / method

15. true / actual / reality / opposite

Fill each of the numbered blanks in the passage with one suitable word.

PLASTICS

In our eyes, the desirability of a material or object is inextricably linked to its availability. If it is plentiful and therefore cheap, it becomes unattractive. It is (0)..... *this*..... simple human truth that has brought (1)..... a reversal in the perception of plastics in the twentieth century. As the industrial uses (2)..... grown, the appreciation of plastics (3)..... materials having intrinsic beauty has decreased.

Bakelite, a material discovered by L. H. Baekeland, typifies the changing attitude of the public (4)..... plastics. In the early (5)..... of its development, it was made (6)..... decorative objects and was used as a moulded substitute for onyx and marble. (7)..... demand grew, it was produced in greater quantities, became cheaper and began to be used for light-fittings, telephones and ashtrays, thus losing any pretensions to stylishness it (8)..... had. The same attitude applies to all plastics nowadays, to the (9)..... that "plasticky" has become a derogatory term even though many plastics are very expensive. Fluorocarbons in particular perform well in situations (10)..... no other material, (11)..... the cost, would be able to survive.

Because of this change (12)..... attitude, plastics are rarely used (13)..... purely aesthetic purposes. Although some beautiful products are still made, the sad (14)..... is that plastics are now usually chosen for the simple (15)..... that production is not feasible in any other material.



UNIT 11

PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING

AT ONE WITH NATURE



I know you're the bee's knees at map reading, honey, but on the off chance you've made a mistake, shall we ask the way?

I felt on top of the world. Spring had arrived and the trees were in blossom. It was late March and in search of some peace and with a view to shutting out the big noisy world, I lay peacefully on my back, meditating on the beauty of nature. In the presence of such tranquillity I soon relaxed and became absorbed in watching birds build their nests, to the exclusion of all other sights and sounds. I felt at one with nature and had no intention of hurrying home.

In the seclusion of a place like this you are in a state of bliss. I got up and wandered along the little path, on the off chance I would see a wise old owl or majestic hawk and if by any chance a rabbit hopped across my path, I would be over the moon.

FILL IN with the appropriate prepositions.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| • except | ⇒ with the exception | • attend | ⇒ deal |
| • enthusiastic | ⇒ enthusiasm | • search | ⇒ in search |
| • accompanied | ⇒ in the company | • be priced | ⇒ sell |
| • sympathise | ⇒ sympathy | • be proud | ⇒ take pride |



I know you take a lot of pride in your beard, Eric, but that still doesn't mean we're old enough to marry.

REPHRASING

- rise ⇒ go up ⇒ there is/was/has been an increase/rise in
- make up ⇒ consist of ⇒ comprise ⇒ be composed/comprised of
- call/drop by/around/in on ⇒ stop by ⇒ pay sb a visit
- (make) plans/provision for ⇒ map/work out ⇒ look ahead
- consider ⇒ take into account/consideration ⇒ allow for ⇒ make allowances for
- find out ⇒ come to my attention ⇒ draw sth to sb's attention ⇒ point sth out to sb

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. The latest model of this computer sells for £1,000. (at)
The latest model £1,000.
2. Water makes up seventy per cent of the earth's surface. (is)
Seventy per cent water.
3. Jackson's parents wrote to the university in the hope that they would get a grant. (with)
Jackson's parents wrote a grant.
4. She sympathises greatly with people who can't find a job. (for)
She who can't find a job.
5. Julian's proud of his stamp collection. (in)
Julian stamp collection.
6. We ought to have dropped in on Muriel when we were in town. (visit)
We ought to have in town.
7. The witness entered the court accompanied by two plain-clothes detectives. (of)
The witness entered the court detectives.
8. The number of people using the Internet has gone up rapidly. (rapid)
There of people using the Internet.
9. Amanda always turns shy when there are adults around. (in)
Amanda always adults.
10. I'm afraid that no one knows the access code except Mark. (with)
I'm afraid that knows the access code.



TURN • BRING EXPRESSIONS



- ✓ turn a blind eye (to): ignore, pretend not to notice
 - *Some of his business activities are illegal, but local police tend to turn a blind eye to them.*
- ✓ turn one's attention/thoughts to sth: start to concentrate on
 - *Once the matter of health care was settled, the Prime Minister turned his attention/thoughts to education.*
- ✓ turn sth to one's advantage: make a situation favour oneself
 - *The opposition party turned the strike to their advantage in an attempt to discredit the government.*
- ✓ turn one's nose up at sth: express contempt for, reject
 - *Despite his lack of qualifications, he continues to turn his nose up at low-paying jobs.*
- ✓ turn one's back (on): turn the front part of one's body away; abandon, ignore
 - *She turned her back on me so quickly that I didn't have time to see her face.*
 - *Shane has turned his back on his singing career and gone into acting.*
- ✓ turn over a new leaf: improve one's behaviour; change
 - *Alex has promised to turn over a new leaf and behave himself in class.*
- ✓ take (it in) turns to do/doing sth: do sth one after the other, in sequence
 - *The children take it in turns to do the washing-up. Tonight it's Maria's turn.*



I'm willing to turn a blind eye this time Miss Krupp, but next time you do that, you're fired!

- ✓ bring (sb/sth) to mind: remind of
 - *His paintings bring to mind lazy summer days in the country.*
- ✓ bring in a verdict (against sb): give a decision at the end of a trial
 - *As expected, the jury brought in a verdict of not guilty.*
- ✓ bring sb/sth to its knees: defeat, ruin
 - *The government was brought to its knees by enormous economic difficulties.*
- ✓ bring sb to their senses: make sb see reason
 - *I hope you can bring him to his senses; he wants to leave school and start a rock group.*
- ✓ bring sb down to earth: make sb see sth realistically
 - *His social life slowed down significantly when he saw his bank statement, which brought him down to earth.*
- ✓ bring sb down a peg or two: make sb realise that they are not as important as they think they are
 - *You certainly brought him down a peg or two when you told him he was just a clerk, and not the manager.*
- ✓ bring sth (out) into the open: reveal publicly
 - *The spy scandal was finally brought (out) into the open.*

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. He said I should concentrate on more important matters. (turn)
He said I ought important matters.
2. The arms scandal totally destroyed the Democratic Party. (to)
The Democratic Party the arms scandal.
3. I would not say no to a free weekend in that hotel. (up)
I would not in that hotel.
4. The local council has chosen to ignore the illegal building that is going on. (eye)
The local council has chosen to that is going on.
5. George has decided to change his ways and get to work earlier. (new)
George has decided get to work earlier.
6. This song reminds me of my trip to the South of France. (brings)
This song the South of France.
7. The press revealed the truth after a long period of speculation. (open)
The press after a long period of speculation.
8. The jury found the accused man guilty. (verdict)
The jury the accused man.
9. She ignored all her old friends when she became famous. (turned)
She when she became famous.
10. Jason and I shared the driving. (took)
Jason and I driving.





UNIT 11

ADVERBS - COLLOCATIONS

THE BOXER



You'll be deeply sorry, Captain. You won't be able to sail this ship single-handed.

As he walked around the ring, deeply moved by the sights and sounds which had changed amazingly little over the years, he thought back to the days of his youth which he so sorely missed now, a time when he was physically and mentally fit enough to take on even the most heavily favoured challenger, and win. Now, only a few years following the most bitterly contested fight in local boxing history, it was perfectly clear to Frank that the time had come to hang up his gloves for good, a heart-rending decision for one so keenly competitive, fully acquainted with the sport and completely devoted to it.

Match the adverbs with the sets of adjectives.

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|---|
| 1. bitterly | <input type="checkbox"/> | a. still, frank, honest, natural, welcome, normal |
| 2. perfectly | <input type="checkbox"/> | b. indebted, moved, attached, impressed |
| 3. fully | <input type="checkbox"/> | c. cold, resentful, jealous, disappointed |
| 4. deeply | <input type="checkbox"/> | d. aware, conscious, equipped, insured |

ADVERB COLLOCATION

- breathtakingly beautiful
- strongly biased, worded
- vitally important
- far superior, worse, better
- newly discovered, acquire
- doggedly persist, refuse
- cautiously optimistic

ADJECTIVE & NOUN COLLOCATIONS

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|--------------------------|---------------|------------------|--------------------------|----------------|
| I. 1. gutter | <input type="checkbox"/> | a. deaf | II. 1. scared | <input type="checkbox"/> | a. awake |
| 2. blind | <input type="checkbox"/> | b. asleep | 2. long-standing | <input type="checkbox"/> | b. hours |
| 3. stone | <input type="checkbox"/> | c. devotion | 3. naked/plain | <input type="checkbox"/> | c. stiff |
| 4. crystal | <input type="checkbox"/> | d. conference | 4. peak | <input type="checkbox"/> | d. motive |
| 5. sound | <input type="checkbox"/> | e. clear | 5. wide | <input type="checkbox"/> | e. truth |
| 6. summit | <input type="checkbox"/> | f. press | 6. ulterior | <input type="checkbox"/> | f. arrangement |

M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

It was a (1)..... beautiful view from the balcony, but it was a bitterly cold morning. Mary was still sound asleep and was lying perfectly still in her bed. I, on the other hand, had been (2)..... awake for hours wondering what the next step should be. It was (3)..... important that I contact Hamish, even though I was fully aware of the dangers involved. To be perfectly honest, I was not sure if they were watching him, but I had to take the chance. It would be far worse if I did nothing. Admittedly, I was scared (4)..... of what might happen to him, and was (5)..... indebted to him for having saved my skin on the last mission, but the newly discovered plot to disrupt the summit conference had to be reported to headquarters in London at once. The (6)..... truth of the matter was that I had no choice.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. a. strongly | b. breathtakingly | c. doggedly | d. vitally |
| 2. a. wide | b. newly | c. deeply | d. plainly |
| 3. a. strongly | b. heavily | c. vitally | d. fully |
| 4. a. clear | b. stiff | c. conscious | d. cold |
| 5. a. very | b. blindly | c. bitterly | d. deeply |
| 6. a. plain | b. blind | c. cold | d. ulterior |

- clear one's throat • bite the dust • polish something off • keep/stay/steer clear of
- wipe the floor with sb • throw in the sponge • beat about the bush • wash one's hands of sth
- sweep the board • mop one's brow • off the beaten track • home and dry



"I'm not going to (1)..... about the bush, lads. There's a lot of work to be done if we want to win this game. I know you've (2)..... the floor with the opposition in the last few matches, and I congratulate you on that, but we aren't home and (3)..... yet, I can assure you. The opposition haven't (4)..... in the sponge, and they don't look like doing so either, so the fight's not over. Now, in the second half, watch Diaz closely - he's their most dangerous player. Just keep possession until you see an opening and then go for it."

"All right, that's all I have to say. Now go out there and do your best. And (6).....
clear of trouble."

- | | | | | |
|----|-------------|-----------|------------|-------------|
| 1. | a. steer | b. sweep | c. beat | d. run |
| 2. | a. swept | b. washed | c. mopped | d. wiped |
| 3. | a. dry | b. beaten | c. swept | d. washed |
| 4. | a. thrown | b. swept | c. cleared | d. polished |
| 5. | a. polished | b. swept | c. cleared | d. mopped |
| 6. | a. go | b. steer | c. sweep | d. beat |



UNIT 11

EXPRESSING...

ABILITY

- be on top of
- find one's feet
- know the ropes
- spread one's wings
- come into one's own
- give a good account of oneself

INABILITY

- go/be/pass over/above one's head
- lose the hang/knack of sth/doing
- lose one's touch
- be all fingers and thumbs
- can't teach an old dog new tricks
- not have it in one

DECISION

- come/jump to/reach the conclusion
- reach/come to/arrive at a decision
- take it into one's head to...
- clinch it (for sb)
- the ball is in sb's court
- be up to sb
- make up one's mind
- come down in favour of
- keep one's options open
- when/if it comes to it/the crunch



We finally decided not to get divorced for the sake of the children. When it came to the crunch, Harold wouldn't take them and neither would I!

GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

- He was called to for financial mismanagement.
They didn't come on of the bad weather.
We gave a good of ourselves in the Inter-Schools Soccer Tournament.
- He lost his when he heard the police coming and ran away.
Matters came to a(n) when she discovered he had told her a pack of lies.
It went right over my when he started talking about genetics.
- Mary's new husband found in the eyes of all the family.
Can you please do me a(n) this afternoon?
Most of us came down in of Finland for the conference.
- She was dressed from to toe in black.
There's no need to shout at the of your voice like that!
Bob is on of the situation, so you can stop worrying.
- Once I found my , I really enjoyed the job.
When the river overflowed we had three of water in our sitting room.
I've been on my all day so I'm not going to do any cooking tonight.
- The soldiers to attention when the general approached.
You to the conclusion that he was guilty without considering the evidence.
He did it wrong because he the gun and didn't wait for instructions.

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- I simply could not tell her the truth. (have)
I simply tell her the truth.
- Why did you decide to do such a stupid thing? (head)
Why did you such a stupid thing?
- I'm sure that once he's learned the system, he'll perform well. (own)
I'm sure that once he's learned the system.
- With your qualifications you certainly don't have to be forced into a decision, Sandy. (options)
With your qualifications , Sandy.
- Now it's up to you to do something about the situation. (court)
Now something about the situation.
- If necessary, I'll testify in court. (comes)
If in court.
- Can you tell us the moment you decide, so that we can act accordingly? (made)
Can you tell us the moment we can act accordingly?
- He's the clumsiest person in the world when it comes to mending anything. (fingers)
He's mending anything.

USE OF ENGLISH



GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

• Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

SET A (based on EXPRESSING..., RELATED WORDS, TURN EXPRESSIONS, COLLOCATIONS)

1. It's so easy to track of time when you're enjoying yourself.
She used to be good at composing crosswords but she's beginning to the hang of it.
Hurry up, or we'll out on all the free food at the gallery's opening.
2. Jordan his throat nervously and began to speak.
Our little talk the air so we're the best of friends again.
Jack's evidence up the mystery of how the poison got into the coffee.
3. This is a(n) superior brand of coffee, Madam.
We talked into the night about old times and old friends.
People came from and wide to see the exhibition.
4. Professor Lawson's lectures are as as dust, aren't they?
He just drove off and left me high and in the middle of the forest.
We've got the loan from the bank so we're home and with our new business.
5. I'd rather be my boss than work for someone else.
The children have been on their all day.
He's a quiet little man but he really came into his during the crisis.
6. It's a classic 1965 Jaguar and I had to pay through the for it.
Billy's girlfriend turned her up at the dinner I cooked so he needn't bring her again.
I've had this cold for over a week and my is still blocked.

SET B (guided)

1. I play tennis now and again to my hand in.
I can't track of how many jobs Tommy's had.
How do you manage to your chin up when life is so unkind to you?
➤ put
➤ keep
➤ hold
2. Do you believe there's a great behind the creation of the universe?
Did he meet her by or accident?
The aeroplane's unique enables it to fly.
➤ plan
➤ charge
➤ design
3. The is that he's left the country.
Can I have a with you about tomorrow's meeting?
He said he'd help us and he's a man of his
➤ talk
➤ promise
➤ word
4. I only go up to London on occasions.
I'll have my steak cooked , please.
He paid a small fortune for an extremely stamp.
➤ rare
➤ raw
➤ scarce
5. We're having roast for our Christmas dinner.
She sent me on a wild chase just to get me out of the house.
Selling such a profitable business is like killing the that lays
the golden egg.
➤ turkey
➤ goose
➤ hen
6. There was no need to her head off just because she was ten minutes late.
I really had to my lip when the doctor put a tight bandage on my ankle.
The air conditioner has broken down so we'll have to the bullet till they
get it fixed.
➤ bite
➤ cut
➤ take













WHY CHILDREN LIE

Children lie, and perhaps the first thing parents should consider is why. Are you, as a parent, prone to lying yourself? So-called white lies may mean little to adults but children will often view them as real lies. I was angry with my young son for not telling me the truth about something, but hadn't I the day before refused an invitation to a party on the grounds that I was too busy, while the truth was I simply felt like an evening in front of the television after a hard week's work? In other words, we adults quite frequently find ourselves telling lies of convenience. If we want to set an example to our children, we should remember that actions speak louder than words.

When a 7-year-old comes home from a birthday party, she will probably respond happily to questions about who was there and what games they played. At 14, this same child may respond sullenly, evasively or with outright lies. One of the great strains between parents and children is the child's ever-increasing need to become independent, and the parents' opposing need to protect and guide. However, most parents rarely think through what they need to know about their child's life. They should develop a mental checklist, which might include: whereabouts during free time, whether homework has been completed, television-watching habits, and behaviour at school. As the child develops, the list can be revised to help promote independence.

Once the parents decide what they do need to know, they can make it clear their child still has areas of privacy. Some people believe their child's room is one such area. Others may tell the child that telephone calls and letters are private. What's important is that the parents first work out what they need to know at what age, and then talk to their child about it.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|--|
| 1. prone to |  | a. vaguely |
| 2. white lie |  | b. for the reason that |
| 3. mean little |  | c. liable to |
| 4. on the grounds that |  | d. gloomily, morosely |
| 5. actions speak louder than words |  | e. think about carefully |
| 6. sullenly |  | f. be of minor importance |
| 7. evasively |  | g. well-intentioned untruth |
| 8. think through |  | h. what you do is more important than what you say |

Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. What does the writer suggest we think about before we try and understand why our children lie?
.....
2. Explain in your own words how children change their attitude with age, and how a parent should be prepared for this.
.....











KNOWING YOUR CHILDREN'S FRIENDS

It's important to know who your child's friends are. Research has shown that children who lie usually have friends who lie, too. But it is frustrating. Once our children start school, they make friendship choices that we may not like, but we cannot control. As children grow older, friendships often become more important to them than ties to their parents. For this reason, a parent should know who their child's friends are and what they do when together. Encourage your child to invite friends home. Parents have the right to tell a child they disapprove of a friend, but only if they have specific evidence about a friend's bad behaviour - if they catch him lying or stealing, say. But be prepared for a big struggle if you attempt to separate your child from a friend. line 2

One approach may be to explain why you disapprove of lying and anti-social behaviour, and how these friends encourage such conduct. However, the good news is that by the end of secondary school your child will be less influenced by his peers, and your relationship with him should improve.

Even the best parents may catch their child lying. How can this be handled? Trying to force a confession can be the worst tactic, and rather than getting a child into a corner where the only way out is to lie, parents are better off focusing on what they can do to prevent it recurring. If the lie was about coming home late, make clear why their coming home late was important, and why you must know the truth. Perhaps the parents' most important contribution towards bringing up a truthful child is to develop a relationship founded on trust. Lying erodes closeness and intimacy. For that reason, parents should always try to give a child the feeling they can be trusted to tell the truth. Parents may start out with the child's trust, but as the child grows older, parents must earn it.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| 1. ties |  | a. based on |
| 2. anti-social behaviour |  | b. give all one's attention to |
| 3. peers |  | c. eats away at, destroys |
| 4. force a confession |  | d. connections, bonds |
| 5. get sb into a corner |  | e. make someone tell the truth |
| 6. focus on |  | f. people of the same age, companions |
| 7. founded on |  | g. unacceptable conduct in the community |
| 8. erodes |  | h. put sb in a situation where they can't escape |

Answer with a word or short phrase.









1. What exactly is "frustrating"? (line 2)
.....
2. According to the writer, what is preferable to forcing a child into lying?
.....
3. In a paragraph of between 50 and 70 words, summarise in your own words as far as possible, what parents should do to create an atmosphere that discourages lying.



HAVE THE TIME OF YOUR LIFE IN VIENNA

Vienna is the place to go. Imagine an outstandingly beautiful city steeped in history, yet as modern as tomorrow: impressive buildings, opulent shops, elegant boulevards; green oases of parks and gardens; coffee houses and taverns buzzing with conversation; an atmosphere of warmth and friendliness, where music and dance are a way of life. Set all this against the fabulous backdrop of the River Danube and Vienna woods, and you get the picture. Vienna comes alive on the Ringstrasse, the magnificent 1860s boulevard which replaced the old city walls. Marvel at the grandeur of the State Opera House, Parliament, City Hall and the University. Vienna is vibrant with music, theatre, opera, jazz, film, painting; you name it, you're sure to find it. Try the Museum of Fine Arts or while away some time at the Clock Museum, where the astronomical clock takes 20,904 years to complete a single revolution. Then chat about it afterwards over a cup of Viennese coffee - or just dream an afternoon away, soaking up the local atmosphere. Vienna is a special city just waiting for people of refinement, people just like you.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|---------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. steeped in |  | a. greatness, impressive appearance |
| 2. opulent |  | b. rich |
| 3. buzzing |  | c. setting |
| 4. backdrop |  | d. full of |
| 5. grandeur |  | e. long, continuous sound |
| 6. vibrant |  | f. spend time pleasantly/idly |
| 7. while away |  | g. culture |
| 8. refinement |  | h. full of life/energy |

Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.









- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. The writer is trying to portray Vienna as a city of | 2. The writer suggests Vienna is for |
| A cosmopolitan charm. | A artists. |
| B adventure. | B lovers of music. |
| C romance. | C people who want a quiet time. |
| D fun, especially for the young. | D discerning people. |



HOLIDAY INSURANCE

All travellers should take out insurance. Figures prove that most people do not in fact and take the chance that they will never need it. Statistically, chance may favour them. Just one in fifteen makes a claim under holiday insurance. Half such claims arise from holiday cancellations before travellers even set foot abroad. The rest are mainly for lost property or medical expenses. If you do decide to cover yourself, don't forget to read the small print. You may not realise, for example, that women travelling in late pregnancy cannot make pregnancy-related claims. Or that to be compensated for theft of valuables you must report the loss to local police within 24 hours and get proof that you have done so. And although luggage may be insured for up to \$1,500, compensation for any single article may be limited to \$200 - and, as with certain other claims, subject to a \$25 deduction. As a minimum, your policy should provide: medical expenses of up to \$250,000 in Europe; \$1,000,000 for the rest of the world; personal liability cover of \$1,000,000; up to \$1,500 for loss of cash and personal belongings; \$75 for immediate needs if baggage is delayed; for aircraft delays of more than 12 hours up to \$60 for out-of-pocket expenses. If you have to cancel for any unavoidable reason, such as a family death, accident or jury service, your holiday money should be refunded.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. take out |  | a. study in detail |
| 2. set foot |  | b. given back |
| 3. read the small print |  | c. go to |
| 4. subject to |  | d. what you pay for yourself |
| 5. personal liability |  | e. secure by application |
| 6. out-of-pocket expenses |  | f. affected by |
| 7. immediate needs |  | g. personal responsibility |
| 8. refunded |  | h. what one requires on the spot |

Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

- This advertisement claims that
 - most people benefit from holiday insurance.
 - half the people make some sort of claim.
 - most claims are for medical expenses.
 - less than 25% of people make any claim at all.
- It suggests that
 - it's not worth taking out insurance in many cases.
 - you may not be as well-covered as you imagine.
 - most people only insure for cancelled holidays.
 - it's unlikely you will be covered in case of an unavoidable occurrence.



UNIT 2

UNREAL PAST - THE SUBJUNCTIVE

UNREAL PAST THE SUBJUNCTIVE

*Heaven forbid that he should retire - it means
twice as much husband on half as much money.*
Anon.

A WOULD RATHER (=WOULD PREFER)

different subjects
⇒ past/past perfect

- I don't want to tell him; I'd rather you told him.
- I didn't want to tell him; I'd rather you had told him.

B WISH - IF ONLY

WISH/IF ONLY + past (perfect)
(for regrets about present and past situations)

- I wish/If only I had my bag with me now.
- I wish/If only I hadn't left my bag at home.

WISH/IF ONLY + different subject + WOULD
(for complaints & displeasure)

- What a pity/shame that it is raining!
- ⇒ I wish/If only it would stop raining.

NOTE: WISH + FULL INFINITIVE (strong formal request) > I wish to see the officer in charge.

C IT'S (HIGH/ABOUT) TIME

- It's (high/about) time they repaired this road.
- It's (high/about) time you had a haircut.
- It's (high/about) time we were leaving.

D HAD BETTER (= SHOULD)

- It is essential that he (should) know the truth.
- ⇒ We had better tell him the truth.
- Whatever you do, don't tell anyone.
- ⇒ You'd better not tell anyone, whatever you do.

E AS IF/THOUGH/WHAT IF/IMAGINE (IF)/ SUPPOSE/SUPPOSING

- He talks about the subject as if/though he knew all about it.
- What if/Imagine (if) you won the pools?
- Suppose/Supposing you had children like theirs!

F CONDITIONALS

- If I were you, I'd apply for that job.
- If he were to find out, there would be trouble.
- If need be, we'll work at the weekend.

G OTHER CASES

- Come what may, I will always stand by you.
- It's strange that he should say that.
- Would that it were true!
- Try as I might, I couldn't lift it.
- Be that as it may, I still disagree.
- Long live the Republic!
- Heaven forbid!
- Suffice it to say that I was right.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. Please don't leave your bicycle in the hall. *I'd...*
2. Dad doesn't want you to play in the garage. *Dad would...*
3. You still haven't written that letter. *It's...*
4. What a shame you didn't meet my uncle. *If...*
5. We should send for a doctor. *We'd...*
6. I'm sorry I sold the house at that price. *I wish...*
7. I know he isn't the owner of the shop, but he acts like it. *He acts as...*
8. You really ought to apologise to him. *You'd...*
9. It's most odd that he said that. *That he should...*
10. Whatever made Tony do such a stupid thing? *I wish...*
11. The bathroom tap urgently needs fixing. *It's high...*
12. It's a pity there weren't more people at the reception. *I wish...*



EXPRESSING LIKES, DISLIKES AND PREFERENCES

A I'D RATHER

same subject ⇒ present/perfect infinitive

- I'd rather not go by car; I'd rather fly.
- I'd rather not have gone by car; I'd rather have flown.

B WOULD RATHER (THAN) = WOULD SOONER (THAN)

- I'd rather/sooner live in a house than a flat.
- I'd rather/sooner you did your homework than watched TV.

RATHER THAN/INSTEAD OF

- Rather than wait/Instead of waiting for the bus, I took a taxi.

C PREFER

- Ryan prefers the night shift to the day shift.
- Ryan prefers working the night shift to the day shift.
- Ryan prefers to/would prefer to work the night shift rather than the day shift.
- I'd prefer you not to say anything.

D PREFERENCE

- I expressed my preference for...
- I (chose)... in preference to...
- I like... better/more than...
- I opted for... rather than/instead of...
- There is nothing I would like more than (to)...
- I'm not in the mood... • I'd (just) as soon... as

E HATE

- bear (sb) a grudge (against)...
- loathe/despise/abhor/detest
- can't stand/bear...
- My pet hate is...
- have (deep/utter) contempt/a hatred/a loathing of/for

F REGRETS

- I wish/if only I hadn't told her.
- ⇒ I bitterly regret telling/having told her.
- If only/I wish I had remembered her birthday.
- ⇒ I could kick/have kicked myself for forgetting her birthday.
- If only I had had enough sense to call first.
- ⇒ Why didn't I call first?

G (DIS)LIKE/LOVE

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| • find sth enjoyable | • develop/acquire a taste for sth | • hit it off with sb |
| • (not) be to one's taste/liking | • take an instant liking/dislike to... | • not take kindly to... |
| • (not) be keen on/fond of/devoted to | • (not) be one's cup of tea | • (not) appeal to one |
| • not be averse to | • take to | • not care for |
| • be partial/attached to | • can't resist | • think the world of sb |
| • have a weakness/passion for | • take a shine to sb | • have a soft spot for sb |

ORAL PRACTICE

1. He said he'd rather have the blue model. *He expressed...*
2. Alf will never forgive her for spreading that rumour about him. *Alf still bears...*
3. I don't fancy meat; let's have fish instead. *Rather...*
4. June was not very keen on the film. *The film was...*
5. More than anything, I'd like a swimming pool. *There is...*
6. He wishes he had accepted their offer of a job. *He bitterly...*
7. Why can't he arrive on time for once? *If...*
8. Colin didn't want to start an argument so he said nothing. *Rather...*
9. I liked the new doctor the moment I met her. *I took...*
10. If only I hadn't said that! *I could...*
11. Jim did not like it when you called him a bigot. *Jim did not take...*
12. I hate it when he whistles. *I wish...*



A "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- Jenny didn't feel like going to the party. (*mood*)
Jenny to the party.
- You must be on time for your interview. (*essential*)
It for your interview.
- We can put off the meeting until next week, if at all necessary. (*be*)
If until next week.
- His one ambition is to be a millionaire. (*nothing*)
There be a millionaire.
- He definitely has something against me for getting that promotion. (*bears*)
He definitely that promotion.
- I really wish I hadn't spilled the beans on them. (*bitterly*)
I on them.
- Marianne likes anything with chocolate in it. (*weakness*)
Marianne chocolate in it.
- Doug is fond of his sister's kids. (*spot*)
Doug sister's kids.
- Roy didn't want to do the artificial intelligence course, so he chose Maths. (*opted*)
Roy the artificial intelligence course.
- She said she would much rather translate medical texts than technical data. (*her*)
She than technical data.

B DERIVATIVES

RETIRING TO SPAIN

I must admit to having always been (0)..... *madly* in love with Spain.
It is a country that has had an enormous (1)..... on me.
I now speak the language (2)..... and I understand how Spaniards think. I have never been a very (3)..... type but on my (4)..... I shall buy a small villa in my favourite village. I have already (5)..... up the advantages and disadvantages of moving at that age, and as I have already been (6)..... by many of the villagers, it is a(n) (7)..... I shall never be lonely. Their (8)..... thought that very special and touching. In all (9)..... of me was something children will follow me there as the (10)..... my grown-up as well as the weather, is something they love.

MAD
INFLUENTIAL
FLUENT
ADVENTURE
RETIRE
WEIGHT
FRIEND
COMFORT
ACCEPT
PROBABLE
WARM

USE OF ENGLISH

A GUIDED CLOZE TEST: FILL IN

THE SENSATION OF SMELL

Our appreciation (0)..... of the taste of food comes, in fact, largely through its smell. That is to say, the sensations of taste are detected mainly in the nose (1)..... than in the mouth. Since smell and taste are usually regarded (2)..... the most primitive of the (3)....., it is rather surprising that we do not yet understand their scientific basis in the way we do that of sight and hearing. Although it (4)..... be impossible to describe colours or sounds accurately (5)..... words, we can do so in terms of wavelength and amplitude. We can, however, describe a smell or a taste only vaguely in terms of other tastes and smells. (6)..... of the most astonishing aspects of smell is (7)..... incredibly small quantities of a substance needed to create the sensation. (8)..... much actual matter is left on the ground by the foot of the fox (9)..... the hound is tracking? The sense of smell is (10)..... more acute in moist than in dry climates. It needs a breath of air in the passages of the nose, which is one reason (11)..... people hold their noses (12)..... taking unpleasant medicines and why food (13)..... tasteless when we have a bad cold. But there is (14)..... a long way to go before scientists understand the mechanism of this sense that we take so much for (15).....

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| 0. on / in / of / to | 6. Because / Many / One / Few | 11. for / why / because / the |
| 1. better / rather / also / less | 7. the / how / why / because | 12. when / for / as / because |
| 2. as / like / one / for | 8. So / However / How / When | 13. feels / has / becomes / reacts |
| 3. two / body / senses / feelings | 9. because / which / whose / for | 14. being / so / even / still |
| 4. should / may / ought / will | 10. also / and / being / known | 15. given / granted / true / ourselves |
| 5. in / for / at / by | | |

B Fill each of the numbered blanks in the passage with one suitable word.

SHORT - TERM MEMORY

One of the most important results of research into ageing has been to pinpoint the significance of short-term memory. This faculty (0)..... is easily disturbed as ageing advances. (1)..... seems to happen is that information is received by the brain, which scans it for meaning in order to decode it at some future time. It looks as if the actual capacity of the short-term memory itself may not change too much (2)..... age. A young man and a man in his late fifties (3)..... both be able to remember and repeat an average of eight numbers recited to (4)..... But what does change is that (5)..... the older man is asked to remember (6)..... else between the time he is first given the numbers to memorise and the time he is asked to repeat them, he will be much (7)..... likely to remember the original numbers than the young man. (8)..... is because the scanning stage is more easily disrupted by other activities in (9)..... people. In (10)..... living one experiences this as a fairly minor event - a telephone number forgotten while one (11)..... up an area code, or the first part of complicated street directions (12)..... with the last because the last "turn lefts" and "turn rights" have interfered (13)..... remembering the first directions. In more formal learning, however, the decay of short-term memory is (14)..... than just a mild social embarrassment. It can be a serious bar to further (15)..... or indeed to any progress at all.



UNIT 2

2

PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING

BEING HALF DANISH



In some respects it's an easy job - except when Caesar wants to go water-skiing!

I went to school in England, but having a Danish mother means I have spent a great deal of time in Denmark. Under the circumstances I am sometimes in a state of confusion as to my true nationality. On the one hand I feel very English but there are other occasions when, beyond a shadow of a doubt, my Danish side comes out. My dad says I'm English on the grounds that I love cricket and that I'm an expert on British history, but my mum says I'm Danish by virtue of the fact I was born in Copenhagen. To be honest, I'm very mindful of the dangers of showing favouritism to either country in front of them. In the event of Denmark playing England at football or something, I find myself supporting both sides, if that's possible, at any rate when my parents are around. In some respects I'm neither one nor the other - especially with regards to food. I love spaghetti, so on the basis of that, maybe I'm just a true European!

A FILL IN with the appropriate prepositions.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| * take | ⇒ deprive | * depend | ⇒ be subject |
| * rob | ⇒ steal | * responsible | ⇒ charge |
| * decide | ⇒ opt | * call | ⇒ demand |
| * think | ⇒ occur | * instead | ⇒ as an alternative |



Or, as an alternative to cash, they've offered you a cut-price skiing holiday in Austria next week.

REPHRASING

- * criticise ⇒ find fault with ⇒ run/put down ⇒ come in for criticism ⇒ be/come under attack ⇒ be open to criticism ♦ pick holes in
- * accept ⇒ adapt to ⇒ come to terms with ⇒ resign oneself to (the fact that)
- * in a hurry ⇒ pressed for time ⇒ race against time ⇒ get a move on
- * in comparison with ⇒ in contrast to ⇒ as against ⇒ can't be compared to ⇒ there's no comparison between
- * have nothing to do with you ⇒ be none of your business ⇒ be no concern of yours ⇒ mind your own business
- * it's your own fault ⇒ it serves you right ⇒ you only have yourself to blame ⇒ (it) is of your own making

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- Roger is now responsible for the whole sales department. (in)
Roger is now sales department.
- I hate the fact that she's always criticising his behaviour. (fault)
I wish his behaviour.
- The recipe says you can use yoghurt instead of sour cream. (as)
The recipe says sour cream.
- This matter has nothing to do with her. (concern)
This matter hers.
- Michelle had her watch and bracelet stolen. (was)
Michelle and bracelet.
- This year's festival was nothing like last year's. (between)
There last year's.
- Why didn't I think of it beforehand? (occurred)
I wish beforehand.
- After much hesitation over the colour they decided on blue. (for)
After much hesitation blue.
- Carolyn has accepted that she'll never be selected for the team. (resigned)
Carolyn has will never be selected for the team.
- Suppose they don't grant him his right to see a lawyer? (of)
What to see a lawyer?

GIVE - RUN EXPRESSIONS



- ◇ give (sb) a new lease of/on life (to): make sb/sth more lively
 - That holiday has given me a new lease of/on life.
- ◇ give sb the benefit of the doubt: believe that sb is truthful/honest, despite being unsure
 - Oliver swears he did not take the money, so we'll just have to give him the benefit of the doubt.
- ◇ give sb an idea of/about: give general information
 - When you see all the trees uprooted, it will give you an idea of how strong the storm was.
- ◇ give (sb) half a/the chance: give sb the slightest opportunity
 - Kevin is such a con man; if you gave him half a/the chance, he'd swindle you out of all your money.
- ◇ give rise to: cause, lead to
 - The take-over bid gave rise to speculation about job security.
- ◇ give one's word: promise
 - Will gave his word that he would never take the car without permission again.
- ◇ give a/no clue to: give a piece of information to help explain/solve sth
 - His accent gave no clue to where he was from.
- ◇ give sth the/one's seal of approval: officially admire sth, or say one likes it
 - I'd certainly give that new restaurant my seal of approval.



I'm afraid I ran a little short of money before I'd finished paying for the suit.

- ◇ run short of: have little of sth left
 - Let's hurry up and finish this report; we're running short of time.
- ◇ run a/the risk of: place oneself in a dangerous or unpleasant position
 - If you leave your car there, you run the risk of getting a parking ticket.
- ◇ run sb's life/an organisation/shop, etc.: be in control of
 - Stop telling me what to do. I want to run my own life.
- ◇ run in the/one's family: have characteristics in common with other family members
 - Alan is a good businessman; mind you, he should be. It runs in his family.
- ◇ run one's eye over: look at sth quickly
 - I didn't have time to read the paper this morning; I just ran my eye over the headlines.
- ◇ run away with the idea/impression/notion: have a completely mistaken idea of sth
 - Now he's had one letter published, he's run away with the notion that he's a professional writer.

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. He made the mistake of thinking he could do anything he liked round here. (impression)
He could do anything he liked round here.
2. The agricultural plan will cause a lot of objections from dairy farmers. (give)
The agricultural plan from dairy farmers.
3. I felt like a new person after I'd had my hip operation. (of)
My hip operation life.
4. He says he didn't know, so we'll just have to take his word for it. (doubt)
We'll just have to as he says he didn't know.
5. Time is very precious, so can we please hurry? (short)
We please hurry?
6. If you carry out your threat, there's a good chance that you will be prosecuted. (risk)
If you carry out prosecuted.
7. It was impossible to tell from her papers who she really was. (no)
Her papers true identity.
8. Could you take a quick look at this letter before I post it? (over)
Could you before I post it?
9. He promised to be here on time. (word)
He on time.
10. The guide book speaks highly of this hotel. (gives)
The guide book approval.



UNIT 2

ADVERBS - COLLOCATIONS

A JOB ABROAD



You know dearest, we should seriously consider becoming vegetarian.

When I moved to Brazil I knew **virtually no** Portuguese. The situation was **further complicated** because I was **grossly misinformed** about both my job and my probable starting salary. Even though I say it myself I had been **highly regarded** in my profession as a chemical engineer, and I had **bitterly resented** being passed over for promotion. I **strongly suspected** I had been cheated out of the post and felt **badly treated**. The plain truth is I should have **seriously considered** staying where I was and swallowing my pride. Everything in my new position seems **highly irregular** and my wife was **visibly shaken** by the whole ordeal and has **complained constantly** from the moment we arrived. We will almost certainly go home, but in the meantime we only have **limited funds** to exist on. You live and learn, as they say.

A Match the words in bold type with the sets of adjectives/verbs.

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------------|--|
| 1. highly | <input type="text"/> | a. advise, disapprove, object, urge |
| 2. strongly | <input type="text"/> | b. needed, damaged, disfigured, treated |
| 3. badly | <input type="text"/> | c. educated, skilled, improbable, unlikely
esteemed, salted |

ADVERB COLLOCATIONS

- **utterly** despise(d), lacking, destroy(ed), ridiculous
- **firmly** held, established, fixed, rooted
- **openly** hostile, opposed
- **reply, act promptly**
- **clearly** express, explain
- **trust implicitly**

B ADJECTIVE & NOUN COLLOCATIONS

- | | | | | | |
|-------------|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------|------------------|
| I. 1. fond | <input type="text"/> | a. trip | II. 1. standing | <input type="text"/> | a. circumstances |
| 2. stable | <input type="text"/> | b. need/straits | 2. track | <input type="text"/> | b. joke |
| 3. field | <input type="text"/> | c. image | 3. extenuating | <input type="text"/> | c. must |
| 4. dire | <input type="text"/> | d. condition | 4. absolute | <input type="text"/> | d. shot |
| 5. spitting | <input type="text"/> | e. memories | 5. long | <input type="text"/> | e. call/shave |
| 6. pet | <input type="text"/> | f. theory/hate | 6. close | <input type="text"/> | f. record |

C M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

It is highly unlikely that I will ever return to my homeland, and now (1)..... memories are all that I have. The new regime is (2)..... hostile to people like me, political dissidents, and at this point is so (3)..... established that I cannot see it being overthrown in my lifetime. We can see from its brief (4)..... record that it does not listen to the voices of opposition. It is a tragedy, for many highly skilled and educated people fled the country when I did, and they are (5)..... needed to get the country back on its feet. The country is in (6)..... need of new leadership but there is simply no one on the horizon to provide it. Those of us who now live abroad can only do our best to improve the situation.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. a. close | b. pet | c. standing | d. fond |
| 2. a. strongly | b. highly | c. openly | d. badly |
| 3. a. openly | b. firmly | c. fondly | d. highly |
| 4. a. track | b. field | c. standing | d. pet |
| 5. a. strongly | b. badly | c. highly | d. utterly |
| 6. a. dire | b. stable | c. fond | d. standing |

RELATED WORDS

HAVING ACCIDENTS

- poison sb's mind • eye strain • take the sting out of • break the ice
- blistering heat • emotional strain • twist sb's words • cut sb dead
- goose bumps • scratch the surface • a clean break • cut to the bone



M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

When I saw her across the room I panicked. It had been almost a year since we had last seen each other, and that meeting had put a terrible (1)..... on both of us. She was the one who had suggested we made a (2)..... break; I had wanted to talk it over to see if there was any chance of us getting together again. My friends had tried to (3)..... my mind against her, but it hadn't worked. I know for a fact they had (4)..... my words when talking to her, too, which had made her hostile and resentful. Now was the time to do something about it. I walked towards her. I wasn't sure how I was going to (5)..... the ice, but I suppose I hoped some sort of inspiration would suddenly come at the last second. I just prayed that she would not (6)..... me dead in front of so many people.

- | | | | | |
|----|------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. | a. twist | b. fracture | c. strain | d. tension |
| 2. | a. clean | b. whole | c. perfect | d. fine |
| 3. | a. twist | b. poison | c. pull | d. cast |
| 4. | a. broken | b. cut | c. bitten | d. twisted |
| 5. | a. scratch | b. melt | c. break | d. fracture |
| 6. | a. break | b. graze | c. scratch | d. cut |



UNIT 2

EXPRESSING...

EASE

- there's nothing to it
- take it easy
- think nothing of
- give/hand sth to sb on a plate
- easy come, easy go
- come naturally
- be a pushover
- can do sth with one's eyes closed

DIFFICULTY

- easier said than done
- be a tough nut to crack
- have a hard time/a job
- take some doing
- be no easy task
- learn the hard way
- teething troubles
- be no picnic
- be hard pressed
- be a hard row to hoe

RESPONSIBILITY

- at the back of
- be up to
- carry the can (for)
- take the blame
- shoulder the blame
- the onus is on
- pull one's weight
- hold the fort
- wash one's hands of
- pass the buck

A GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

1. The child didn't realise what he was doing, so go on him.
I'm going to stay at home and take it this weekend.
It was no task painting the whole house on my own.
2. My little laptop computer is worth its in gold.
He's not the boss so why does he throw his around like that?
Tony never pulls his so we'll be better off doing everything without him.
3. He set up business as a lawyer and had his name on a brass outside the door.
I've got so much on my at the moment that I really can't take on any more work.
Everything he possesses was handed to him on a(n) by his parents.
4. The children crawled past the window on their and knees.
I have to obey the rules so my are tied in this matter.
What you are planning is wrong so I wash my of the whole affair.
5. Waiter! This steak is as as an old boot!
It's time for the government to get with corruption in the public service.
Getting the boss to agree to your plans will be a(n) nut to crack.
6. My sister's children are going home today and I'll be glad to see the of them.
A London taxi-driver has to know the city like the of his hand.
There was a master criminal at the of the bombings but the police never found him.

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. It will be a difficult task to persuade him. (some)
It persuade him.
2. Brazil won the 2002 World Cup easily. (for)
The 2002 World Cup Brazil.
3. He'll be the one to accept responsibility for this affair. (carry)
He'll be the one this affair.
4. I can do that automatically, without even thinking about it. (with)
I can closed.
5. It's not easy to work and be a mother, but people often forget that. (picnic)
Working but people often forget that.
6. It's the easiest thing in the world; just don't be afraid. (it)
There ; just don't be afraid.
7. Can you look after the place while I pop out for ten minutes? (hold)
Can you for ten minutes?
8. We've got problems with the new machine, but they will soon be fixed. (troubles)
We the new machine, but they will soon be fixed.

USE OF ENGLISH



GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

* Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

SET A (based on PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING, VERB EXPRESSIONS, EXPRESSING...)

1. The girls up a large bill at the boutique.
Everyone down the new boss at first but he proved to be highly efficient.
So many people came to the party that we short of food.
2. It will some doing to finish the painting by the weekend.
You will have to it easy for a few weeks after that accident.
If he can't a joke, he's going to have a few problems working with us.
3. It's a(n) secret that Miss Johnson is looking for another job.
I'm keeping a(n) mind on this problem until I get some more information.
If you put your paintings on public display, then they are to criticism, aren't they?
4. The boss gave Gina such a hard that she resigned after a month.
It became a race against to get down the mountain before the storm broke.
I was so pressed for last week that I forgot gran's birthday.
5. I had the fort at the office for a month before they found a suitable replacement.
Her refusal to work overtime during the crisis was against her.
There were so many people off sick that the staff meeting was over until the following week.
6. Mum a sigh of relief as the last of our weekend guests left.
Getting married to a jolly widow old Tom a new lease of life.
I your plan my seal of approval at the beginning so what more do we need to discuss?

SET B (guided)

1. San Francisco sits on a large in the earth's crust.
An electrical was the cause of the fire.
You did no work at all so it's your own that you failed the exam.
2. Jack made his in the world of athletics when he broke three records.
You're wide of the if you think he's a fool, you know.
They were badly injured but there was hardly a on the car.
3. I have never eyes on that man before.
John has his sights on becoming a pilot.
We had a barbecue in the garden and nearly fire to the house.
4. I'm afraid my bank manager is going to that cheque I signed.
Some people will at nothing to get what they want.
Are you in a hurry or will you for supper?
5. He was exhausted but we him on and he made it to the finishing line.
Everyone madly when she came on stage to take a bow.
It had been an awful day so when I got home I myself up with an Irish coffee.
6. I make a(n) of visiting my parents every couple of weeks.
He gave me a long explanation but at no did I believe him.
I sympathise with you up to a(n) but the fact remains that you're in the wrong.

- crack
- fault
- break
- scratch
- mark
- spot
- put
- laid
- set
- keep
- stop
- stay
- cheered
- clapped
- urged
- point
- account
- matter



THINK BEFORE YOU EXERCISE

With about 80% of Britons taking regular exercise, we should be healthier than ever before, but there is an epidemic of injuries hitting the country. About three out of five of those participating in sport will sustain an injury every year, usually from not taking basic precautions to protect themselves. Experts recommend that you always use equipment appropriate to the sport you are playing. Cricketers should wear gloves, pads and a helmet. Mouthguards should be worn in contact sports and specially designed impact-absorbing shoes when running. Shin-guards and ankle supports which prevent bruises, breaks and sprains should be used in football. And, of course, warming up before any physical activity is vital. This could include arm-circling, leg swinging, forward and side bends and jogging on the spot. If you decide to join a fitness class make sure it is the right level for you. Your teacher should check if you have any health or fitness difficulties and set modified exercises if necessary. You should also ensure that you warm up and cool down correctly and wear appropriate footwear and clothing. Most important of all, however, you should listen to your body, because you could suffer devastating consequences from exceeding your capabilities. To avoid problems caused by this, follow these guidelines. Cut down on training if you experience reduced appetite, difficulty sleeping, constant exhaustion or weight loss. Set realistic goals, remembering that to minimise the risk of injury one needs to be fit to take part in sport, not taking part in sport to get fit.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

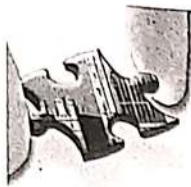
1. epidemic
2. sustain
3. basic precautions
4. appropriate
5. contact sports
6. modified
7. exceeding your capabilities
8. realistic goals



- a. suitable
- b. rapid spread
- c. experience, suffer
- d. doing more than you are able
- e. achievable ends
- f. simple actions taken in advance
- g. made less extreme
- h. sports where contestants come into physical contact

Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The writer's main concern is that
 - A people take part in unsuitable sports.
 - B people only have a half-hearted attitude towards sport.
 - C some people overdo their training.
 - D many people don't feel the benefit of their training.
2. The writer's attitude towards fitness training is that
 - A it is not for everyone.
 - B it does more harm than good.
 - C it should be done in small doses.
 - D it is only beneficial if you exercise with care.



UNIT 3

CONDITIONALS

Were there to have been a happy philosopher in the record of human history, I should like to know his name.
H. L. Mencken

A ALTERNATIVES TO "IF" IF as/so long as, provided/providing that, on condition that, on the understanding that

- They will lend us the money if we agree to pay it back within six months.
- As/So long as we agree to pay it back within six months, they will lend us the money.
- Provided/Providing that we agree to pay it back within six months, they will lend us the money.
- On condition that we agree to pay it back within six months, they will lend us the money.
- On the understanding that we agree to pay it back within six months, they will lend us the money.

B CHANGES IN PARTS OF SPEECH

IF/AS/SO LONG AS ...

you can see it ⇒ it is visible	you can understand it ⇒ it is intelligible
you can carry it ⇒ it is portable	you can hear it ⇒ it is audible
you can read it ⇒ it is legible	you can get to it ⇒ it is accessible
you can eat it ⇒ it is edible	you can do it ⇒ it is feasible

C UNLESS (= IF NOT)

- If you don't turn down the music, we won't hear the phone.
- We won't hear the phone unless you turn down the music.
- The only way they could have got in is if they had a key.
- They could not have got in unless they had a key.
- You cannot vote if you are under 18.
- Not unless you are over 18 are you allowed to vote.

D IMPERATIVE

- If you do that again, you'll rue the day you were born.
- Don't do that again or you'll rue the day you were born.
- Do that again and you'll rue the day you were born.

E INVERSION & CHANGES IN PARTS OF SPEECH

- If she had not co-operated, we might...
- If it had not been for her co-operation, we might...
- Had it not been for her co-operation...
- But for/Without her co-operation...
- If you had not been so obstinate...
- Had it not been for your obstinacy...
- But for your obstinacy...

F INVERSION Should they .../ Were it (not for the fact that) .../ Had it not been for (the fact that) ...

- If by any chance he calls, let me know. ⇒ Should he (happen to/by any chance) call, let me know. (type I)
- If he found out, there would be big trouble. ⇒ Were he to find out, there would be big trouble. (type II)
- The flight left late because of the fog.
- Had it not been for the fog/the fact that it was foggy, the flight would have left on time. (type III)

ORAL PRACTICE

1. It was her lack of concentration that cost her the match. *She would...*
2. There's a chance Alan will be there; if so, I'll ask him. *Should...*
3. The only thing that stopped me from telling her the news was the fact that she was ill. *Had it...*
4. You can't access that website on the net if you haven't got a credit card. *Unless...*
5. The thunderstorm put paid to our plans for a barbecue. *Had...*
6. If he weren't so afraid of heights, he'd come climbing with us. *But for his...*
7. We can build a wall around the garden only if it is less than a metre high. *On...*
8. He'll only buy the land if he can get to it by car. *Provided the...*
9. If you ever try a trick like that again, you and I will part company. *Try...*
10. We missed the lecture because Ron insisted on stopping for coffee. *But...*



C HYPOTHETICAL SITUATIONS - PRESENT & PAST

- I would lend you the money if I had it, but I'm broke myself. (type II)
- Your father ~~would~~ be furious if he were to find out. (type II)
- If you had told me before, I would/could have helped you, but it's too late now. (type III)
- Had you been driving any faster, you might well not have stopped in time. (type III)

H GENERAL TRUTHS (zero conditional)

- If you want to drive a car you have to have a licence.
- These plants only grow if they get a lot of sun.
- You can't vote if you are under eighteen.

I REAL POSSIBILITY (type I)

- If you leave your bag there, someone will/might take it.
- You will get better advice if you ask a professional.
- They'll notify us if they make any further changes.

J MIXED TYPES

- If you are short of money, you shouldn't have bought that dress.
- If you had taken my advice, you wouldn't be in this mess.

K ALTERNATIVES TO IF (NOT) & UNLESS

- Take some extra money with you in case you need it/in case of an emergency.
- In the event of alterations to timetables, passengers are requested to confirm their flights 24 hours in advance.
- In the event that there are alterations to timetables...
- Even if he doesn't want to go, he'll have to. ⇒ **Whether he wants to go or not, he'll have to.**
- If he doesn't do it, you'll have to. ⇒ **Either he does it or you do/will (have to).**
- If you don't book, you won't get a table. ⇒ **You'd better book, otherwise/or else you won't get a table.**

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

- His inefficiency cost us the contract.
- If he hadn't been (so) inefficient, we wouldn't have lost the contract.
- If he hadn't spoken the language so well... ⇒ **But for his command of the language...**
- If Charles had not insisted, they would not have given us our money back.
- Thanks to Charles' insistence, we got our money back.
- If you plan it carefully, you'll succeed. ⇒ **Careful planning is the key to success.**
- The only reason I wouldn't buy it is the colour.
- Were it not for the fact that I don't like the colour, I would buy it.
- You won't be able to trace him if you don't know where he lived last.
- Your only hope/chance of tracing him is to find out/if you find out where he lived last.
- Only by finding out where he lived last will you (be able to) trace him.
- Provided that you don't panic, you'll have no problems at the interview.
- Keep your head and you'll have no problems at the interview.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. He can ask me nicely but I'll still say no. **Even...**
2. Belinda would never have applied for the job if her husband had not encouraged her. **Thanks...**
3. You might need to contact me on my mobile phone, so take the number. **In...**
4. If they don't repair it under guarantee, I'll ask for a complete refund. **Either...**
5. If you succeed, you'll be rewarded handsomely. **Bring...**
6. We may be held up, in which case start the meeting without us. **In the...**
7. We'll manage this easily if you help me. **Give...**
8. You don't know what you are doing because you were not listening to her instructions. **Had you...**
9. There is smoke coming from the engine because you did not put any oil in it. **There would...**
10. I'm only bothering to drive to town because I need to buy some milk. **Were...**



UNIT 3

USE OF ENGLISH

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. Were it not for his arrogance, I would hire him. (*reason*)
The his arrogance.
2. Assuming all goes well this morning, the play will open tomorrow. (*wrong*)
Unless will open tomorrow.
3. You won't get to the station on time unless you take a taxi. (*only*)
Your on time is to take a taxi.
4. Keeping calm is the secret of passing your driving test. (*long*)
As your driving test.
5. If you want my advice, I would forget about buying a new house. (*were*)
If a new house.
6. Given fair warning, I could have avoided that date. (*advance*)
If have avoided that date.
7. The only thing that kept us out of prison was the fact he spoke the local dialect. (*command*)
But would have been imprisoned.
8. If I know in advance, I will arrange things. (*fair*)
Provided I will arrange things.
9. Provided you don't go too fast at the start, you should complete the course. (*time*)
Take complete the course.
10. He wouldn't have to do the work again if he had done it properly in the first place. (*need*)
There to do the work again
if he had done it properly in the first place.

DERIVATIVES

MY BEST FRIEND

Although I've always been full of (0)..... *admiration* for my best friend Tony, I sometimes feel he is too (1)..... in his approach to life. Every discussion we have seems to have a(n) (2)..... serious side, whether it be about the (3)..... to a minor problem or simply the (4)..... of a film he has just seen. He seems totally unable to be flippant - not that he is (5)....., far from it, in fact we often see the funny side of things together, but then he will suddenly (6)..... me by completely changing character. (7)....., I've known him for years now, so (8)..... it's something I'm getting used to. I have to admit though, (9)..... it drove me up the wall. It could well be that he is a(n) (10)....., and insists that everything be just so.

ADMIRE
ANALYSE
NECESSARY
SOLVE
DESCRIBE
HUMOUR
MYSTERY
LUCK
NATURE
ORIGIN
PERFECT

USE OF ENGLISH



A GUIDED CLOZE TEST: FILL IN

PAINTING IN WATER COLOURS

The nineteenth-century obsession (0).....^{with}..... correct watercolour technique bred a revolt in the early part of this century, (1)..... the extent that teaching students how to put on paint began to (2)..... regarded as almost immoral, stifling self-expression and creativity. However, (3)..... it is true that no amount of technical knowledge and expertise can be a substitute (4)..... vision, there is nothing more frustrating than knowing you have something to say but not (5)..... the means to say it. No art exists in a vacuum - we can always learn (6)..... other artists and (7)..... never be ashamed to study their methods as (8)..... as their subject matter. This is, and always has been, part of the quest (9)..... a personal artistic language. Even (10)..... the narrow field of water-based media, there are almost endless different (11)..... of applying paint to paper. Some of these may strike a chord with a student, while (12)..... may not, but they should all be tried out. Learning to understand the capabilities of a medium has a wonderfully liberating (13)..... on one's painting. It enables artists to find their own voice and express their ideas (14)..... confidence and vigour. Always remember, though, that technique is no more than a tool and that the way you paint should never be more important than (15)..... you paint.

0. in / with / on / by

1. at / on / for / to

2. being / been / be / have

3. when / while / despite / so

4. for / in / on / to

5. having / even / get / given

6. that / because / from / how

7. will / should / may / could

8. much / long / well / regards

9. for / on / in / as

10. on / to / of / in

11. types / kinds / ways / uses

12. others / they / those / rest

13. effect / touch / feeling / reaction

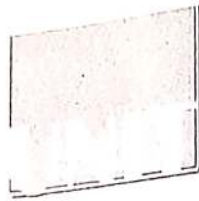
14. for / on / with / by

15. that / which / what / how

B Fill each of the numbered blanks in the passage with one suitable word.

GRAMMAR

A word in a dictionary is very much like a car in a mammoth motor show - full of potential but temporarily inactive. To (0).....^{put}..... the car on the road a(n) (1)..... complex of things is required including fuel, a controller at the wheel and knowledge of the rules of the road. To get a word moving we (2)..... the things that come (3)..... the heading of grammar. Grammar describes words (4)..... action. It classifies words (5)..... parts of speech, lists the changes of form that words can undergo when (6)..... contact with other words and examines the placing of the totality of words needed (7)..... the expression of thought. Because grammar (8)..... like a science and yet does not behave like one (words often jump (9)..... of their classificatory cages), teachers and textbook-writers have been accused of digging too (10)..... into it. A lot of out-of-date conceptions (11)..... fossilised in grammar-books, and their writers do not like to admit this. Nor does the inertia of teachers or the examiner's love of (12)..... unambiguous encourage them to revise the thirty-third edition. It is best to let things carry (13)..... as they are; let sleeping dogmas lie. The pupil-examinees do not want (14)..... as they light on grammar; they merely want to (15)..... rid of it.



3

PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING

POLITICAL SPEECH



Sorry, but in the interest of wildlife preservation, a drop in tourism is needed.

In due course I shall resign, but before I do I'd like to explain, *off the record*, exactly why. *In recent years* I have noticed a decline in moral standards, but I must confess to turning a blind eye to most things, even within my own political party. At times, the behaviour of some of my colleagues has been *beneath contempt*, but at the moment I'm not *at liberty* to give details. If you remember, *in the early stages* of our return to power the country was *in turmoil* and *in need* of a firm hand and I think our policies were *on the right track*. *In line with* other European countries, we tightened our belts *in the interest* of our economy. Then various scandals surfaced and *in the light* of these I have no choice but to resign as they cast doubt on my ability to govern. *For the time being*, the deputy Prime Minister will take my place. *In retrospect*, perhaps I should have been more aware of what was going on. *With regard to* the future, only time will tell...

A Fill in with the appropriate prepositions.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| impulse | ⇒ thinking | ⇒ plenty | ⇒ abundance |
| be offended | ⇒ take offence | ⇒ fond | ⇒ popular |
| be | ⇒ raise/voice objections | ⇒ protest | ⇒ object |
| considerate | ⇒ show consideration | ⇒ convince | ⇒ dissuade |

REPHRASING

- ⇒ trust ⇒ have faith/confidence in ⇒ put my money on ⇒ bank on
 ⇒ there's a (good) chance ⇒ the chances are (that) ⇒ in all likelihood/probability
 ⇒ ignore ⇒ pay no attention to ⇒ take no notice of ⇒ turn a blind eye/deaf ear to
 ⇒ intend ⇒ have the intention of ⇒ have in mind ⇒ have plans to ⇒ mean to ⇒ set out to (do)

E "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- Several local residents are against the council's plans to build a bypass. (*voiced*)
Several local residents to build a bypass.
- According to the newspaper, there are plenty of jobs going in Australia. (*abundance*)
According to the newspaper, in Australia.
- I fully intended to work on the garden today, but didn't get round to it. (*set*)
I, but didn't get round to it.
- Many professional photographers are fond of this make of camera. (*popular*)
This professional photographers.
- You should have paid no attention to what he said. (*notice*)
You should he said.
- I must confess that, looking back now, I feel that I made the wrong decision. (*retrospect*)
I must confess that, the wrong decision.
- You should always be considerate towards other people. (*consideration*)
You should other people.
- If I were you, I wouldn't trust him to do the job properly. (*money*)
If I were you, I wouldn't the job properly.
- If you'd phrased your remark more tactfully, he wouldn't have been offended by it. (*offence*)
He wouldn't have your remark more tactfully.
- In all likelihood the board of directors will choose Derek rather than Neil. (*chances*)
The will choose Derek rather than Neil.

FALL - STAND EXPRESSIONS



- f**
- ◇ **fall foul of:** do sth wrong and get into trouble with sb
If you do not abide by the school rules, you will fall foul of the headmaster.
 - ◇ **fall into arrears:** not be up to date for regular payment *After losing his job he fell into arrears with his rent.*
 - ◇ **fall short of:** not be/have enough; not be good enough *We fell short of our sales target by £10,000.*
 - ◇ **fall flat:** be unsuccessful (eg. a joke) *Rodney told the women a joke about blondes, but it fell flat.*
 - ◇ **fall to pieces/blts:** break into pieces (because of poor quality)
I shouldn't have bought such cheap garden furniture. It's falling to pieces already.
 - ◇ **fall into decay/disrepair:** become in poor condition
Nobody has lived in that house for years. It is a shame to see it falling into decay.
 - ◇ **fall from grace/favour:** lose one's popularity because one has done sth wrong
After the scandal hit the headlines, the singer fell from grace/favour with the public.
 - ◇ **fall on deaf ears:** be ignored (eg. a request, an appeal)
At the council meeting, residents' demands for cleaner streets fell on deaf ears.

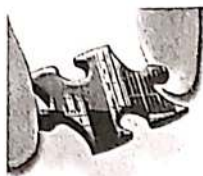


You may find that some of your suggestions fall on deaf ears, Mr Crimble.

- s**
- ◇ **stand trial (for):** be tried in court for a criminal offence *She stood trial for murder, but was acquitted.*
 - ◇ **stand the strain:** tolerate the pressure
She is having difficulty in standing the strain of a full-time job and bringing up a family.
 - ◇ **stand in sb's way/path:** obstruct sb (in their plans)
If she wants to leave school and join the police force, I shall not stand in her way.
 - ◇ **stand the test of time:** endure for a long period without damage or loss of interest/quality
That film was made in 1940, but it has stood the test of time.
 - ◇ **stand on one's own two feet:** be independent; manage without others' help
He's twenty years old. It's time he learned to stand on his own two feet and not depend on his parents.
 - ◇ **stand to win/gain/lose...:** be likely to win/gain/lose...
Helen stands to inherit a lot of money when her grandfather dies.
 - ◇ **stand a (good) chance of:** have a (good) chance of *Juventus stand a good chance of winning the cup.*
 - ◇ **stand out a mile:** be completely obvious, apparent
It stood out a mile that he was lying; he was so nervous and kept licking his lips.

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. The old schoolhouse is in very bad condition and the council should do something about it. (*fallen*)
 The old schoolhouse and the council should do something about it.
2. If you really want to try and get into acting school, I won't stop you. (*path*)
 I won't to try and get into acting school.
3. It was blindingly obvious that he knew nothing about the subject. (*mile*)
 It about the subject.
4. Had he been a little more penitent, his appeal for mercy would not have been ignored. (*deaf*)
 His appeal for mercy had he been a little more penitent.
5. One day Tim is going to get into trouble with the law. (*foul*)
 One day Tim the law.
6. We are behind with our mortgage repayments. (*arrears*)
 We our mortgage repayments.
7. At your age, you should have learnt to do things for yourself, Holly. (*feet*)
 At your age, you should have, Holly.
8. Roy looked very embarrassed when nobody laughed at his politically incorrect joke. (*flat*)
 Roy's and he looked very embarrassed.
9. It is highly likely that Audrey will get the university scholarship. (*stands*)
 Audrey the university scholarship.
10. The minister's popularity dropped sharply after the press leaked details of the scandal. (*grace*)
 The minister details of the scandal.



UNIT 3

ADVERBS - COLLOCATIONS

MIXED MARRIAGE



Yes, I suppose you could say I'm emotionally involved with him, Larry. He's my husband.

When my sister decided to marry someone of a different religion, my family was **sharply divided** on the issue. My mother made it obvious that she was **deeply hurt** by the whole affair and for a time **studiously avoided** her future son-in-law. I was **strictly forbidden** to have any contact with him whatsoever, even though my sister is my best friend and I had no objection to her being so **deeply involved** with a man I rather liked. My sister was **fully aware** that her family could be **irretrievably lost** to her if she continued the relationship, especially as they had **expressly forbidden** her to go ahead with her marriage plans. I know my father had mixed feelings about the situation and **presumably wanted** to keep everyone happy, but my mother is a **notoriously difficult** woman to reason with. Although she had ample opportunity to resolve the whole affair, she refused and made it quite clear that she **wholeheartedly disapproved** of any suggestion of any possible future together for the unfortunate couple.

A Match the words in bold type with the sets of adjectives/verbs.

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|--|
| 1. sharply | <input type="text"/> | a. concur, qualified, booked, aware |
| 2. deeply | <input type="text"/> | b. contrast, criticise, defined, divided |
| 3. fully | <input type="text"/> | c. regret, breathe, ingrained |

ADVERB COLLOCATIONS

- **emotionally involved**, disturbed
- **die**, fail miserably
- **tastefully furnished**, decorated
- **consider**, look upon **favourably**
- **severely punish(ed)**, handicapped
- **wholly immaterial**, convinced

B ADJECTIVE & NOUN COLLOCATIONS

- | | | | | | |
|------------|----------------------|------------------------|---------------|----------------------|-----------------|
| I. 1. high | <input type="text"/> | a. example, rate | II. 1. flying | <input type="text"/> | a. change |
| 2. soft | <input type="text"/> | b. spot, life | 2. unknown | <input type="text"/> | b. naked |
| 3. inside | <input type="text"/> | c. harm, damage | 3. drastic | <input type="text"/> | c. idle, dry |
| 4. dead | <input type="text"/> | d. option, spot, touch | 4. stark | <input type="text"/> | d. evil |
| 5. prime | <input type="text"/> | e. job, information | 5. bone | <input type="text"/> | e. quantity |
| 6. untold | <input type="text"/> | f. easy, simple, tired | 6. necessary | <input type="text"/> | f. visit, start |

C M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

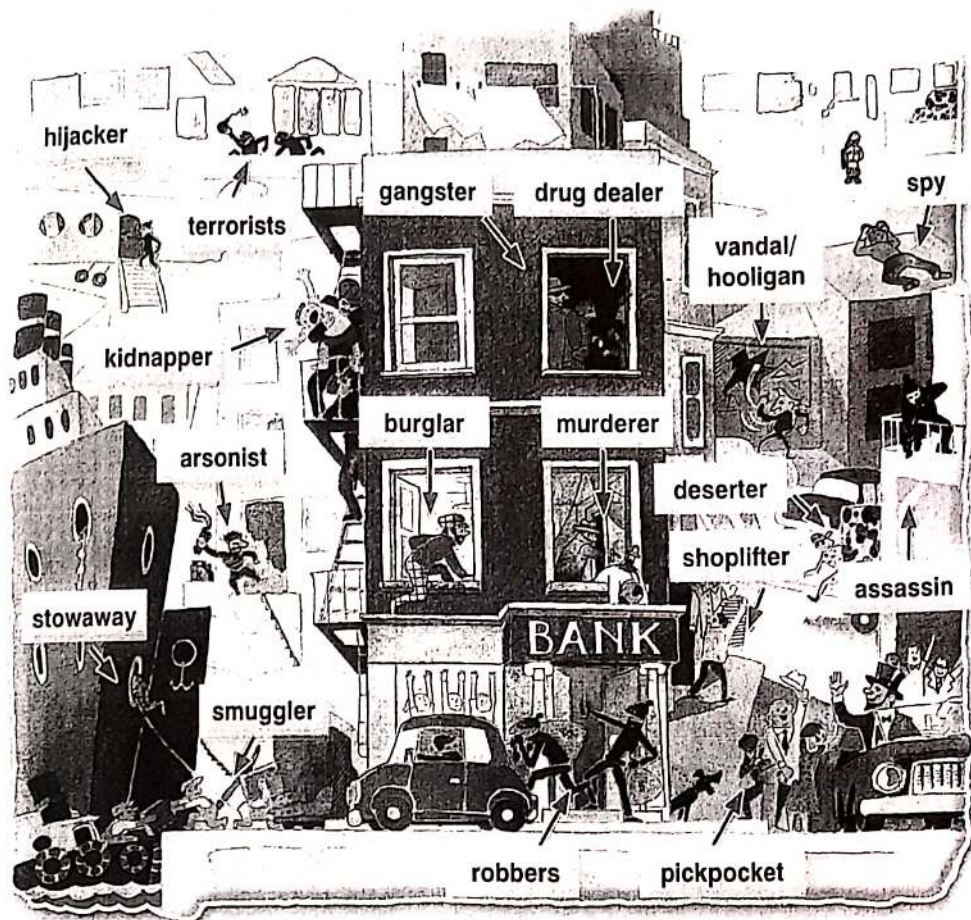
I deeply regret not taking my parents' advice and becoming a doctor. It's not that I'm (1)..... idle, but I tend to go for the (2)..... options that life offers. Work to me was a necessary evil, and fame and fortune were (3)..... immaterial as far as I was concerned. However, things have changed. I am now emotionally involved with a woman who is a prime example of a success story, and feel a(n) (4)..... change is needed in my life if I am to keep up with her. She looks upon my new attitude favourably, but she has the gift of making even the most difficult things look (5)..... easy, and it worries me that if I try something, I will fail miserably. I just fear if this should happen, it would do (6)..... harm to our relationship.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. a. stark | b. soft | c. bone | d. prime |
| 2. a. soft | b. dead | c. stark | d. untold |
| 3. a. deeply | b. sharply | c. fully | d. wholly |
| 4. a. flying | b. drastic | c. high | d. unknown |
| 5. a. dead | b. ample | c. fully | d. deeply |
| 6. a. drastic | b. deep | c. untold | d. prime |

RELATED WORDS

BREAKING THE LAW

- get away with murder
- it is murder on one's feet, back, etc.
- scream/cry blue murder
- daylight robbery
- rob Peter to pay Paul
- rats
- deserting a sinking ship
- steal the show
- steal sb's heart



M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

Dear citizens of Branubia, this is your President speaking. Last night (1)..... blew up the Houses of Parliament and assassinated the Vice-President. Nearly all the soldiers (2)..... from the army and joined a terrorist group, which then hijacked all the planes in our air force. Two of my children have been kidnapped by a rival terrorist group, and a(n) (3)..... has burned down the Royal Palace. (4)..... smashed up the football stadium during our friendly match with Takistan, and 234 people reported having money taken from their jackets and trousers by (5)..... during the match. On top of all this, twenty-seven of the country's banks were robbed on Saturday night. The famous drug (6)..... Enrico Cappucino escaped from prison with seventy other people on Sunday morning, and is now operating again on the streets of Santa Mandra. Apart from these minor incidents, everything is normal in our wonderful country, and there is nothing to worry about.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. a. arsonists | b. terrorists | c. smugglers | d. hijackers |
| 2. a. lifted | b. hijacked | c. deserted | d. spied |
| 3. a. stowaway | b. assassin | c. dealer | d. arsonist |
| 4. a. Terrorists | b. Deserters | c. Hooligans | d. Gangsters |
| 5. a. shoplifters | b. pickpockets | c. smugglers | d. burglars |
| 6. a. dealer | b. vandal | c. terrorist | d. robber |



UNIT

3

EXPRESSING...

DISLIKE

- not take kindly to • cannot stand/bear (the sight of sb/sth) • sb's name is mud • turn against sb
- have sth against sb • give one the creeps • not be to one's liking/not be one's thing • (not) be sb's type
- not be keen on/fond of • not be crazy about • have it in for • not relish the thought/prospect of

ENJOYMENT

- take pleasure/(a) delight in • get a kick out of • get a lot of pleasure out of/from • get a lot out of
- have fun/a good/wonderful time • live it up • have the time of your life • have a whale of a time
- have/be a (good) laugh • be in your element

KINDNESS/ SYMPATHY

- have a heart of gold • someone's heart is in the right place • go easy on • take pity on
- my heart goes out to • feel (sorry) for • you have my deepest sympathy
- have a lot of/no sympathy for • a shoulder to cry on • my heart bleeds for you (irony)

4 GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

1. I'm sorry but it's not my to take part in protest marches.
This brooch is just the for mum's birthday.
Everyone thinks Peter is a great guy but I could tell you a(n) or two about him.
2. You know you can always come to me if you need a(n) to cry on.
Jennifer gave Fred the cold because of the rumours he's spreading about her.
Old Mr Pitt has a chip on his because my office is bigger than his.
3. Don was in his up at the lake and spent every day fishing.
A certain of society is threatening to disrupt the parade on Saturday.
There's a(n) of truth in your theory but you really haven't thought it through.
4. We thought the joke was funny but the headmaster a dim view of it.
That boy is nothing but a bully and it's time you a stand against him.
The puppy we found was so cold and wet that we pity on it and brought it home.
5. He often seems stern and cold but his is in the right place.
Joan's husband was severely injured and my goes out to her in her trouble.
You were late because your Porsche wouldn't start? My bleeds for you.
6. I know we don't a chance of winning the rally but it will be fun taking part.
Danny can't the sight of that man because he knows he's dishonest.
You drove into the back of a stationary car, so you haven't a leg to on.

5 "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. You would have enjoyed yourself if you had come to Cuba with us. (like)
You would you had come to Cuba with us.
2. Andrew enjoys teasing his sister all the time. (delight)
Andrew all the time.
3. My teacher doesn't like me and never leaves me alone. (in)
My teacher leaves me alone.
4. He gets enormous pleasure from teaching the local kids to play basketball. (tick)
He the local kids to play basketball.
5. Don't be too hard on him; the mistake was really not his fault. (on)
Go really not his fault.
6. To be frank, I'm not looking forward to spending the whole summer with them. (prospect)
To be frank, the whole summer with them.
7. Noel seems to enjoy making people feel uncomfortable. (pleasure)
Noel seems to people feel uncomfortable.
8. Had it not been for his behaviour, I wouldn't sympathise with her in the least. (sympathy)
Had it not been for his at all.

GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

SET A (based on PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING, FALL - STAND EXPRESSIONS, RELATED WORDS)

- I like visiting archaeological sites but they're on the feet.
Your girlfriend screamed blue just because there was a spider on the table.
You let Simon get away with although you're very strict with your daughter.
- The of family values in modern society is causing concern.
They say that tooth is one of the commonest problems in the world.
These little villages fall into when the young people head for the cities.
- It escaped my that you were still sitting in the corner, Tommy.
Ben's in a bad mood but don't take any of him.
We had to go to London at short so we couldn't come to your party.
- If she wants to be a dancer, you shouldn't in her way.
Kenny said we would to win £1000 if we bet £10 on that horse.
Only really good books can the test of time and keep their popularity.
- They were asleep when the fire started but the dog the alarm.
I thought you agreed with us when you no objections.
The chairman his voice over the hum of chatter and called everyone to order.
- The amount of money donated far short of what was required.
Many coal miners on hard times once the demand for coal decreased.
Winston Churchill from favour several times during his career in politics.

SET B (guided)

- Martha always has her to the ground so she'll know whether it's true.
I told him twice but it must have gone in one and out the other.
I've no idea what to expect, so I'll play it by when I get there.
 - foot
 - heart
 - ear
- On impulse, Angela all the money out of her bank account.
Lawrence practised his lines each day, getting increasingly nervous
as the date of his audition even closer.
Although Bill had been in the lead for most of the race, on the final bend Jason
..... level and threatened to overtake him.
 - grew
 - drew
 - came
- He handed in a project no resemblance to our instructions.
You really can't go on him such ill-will for so trivial a reason.
Dressed in an immaculate uniform and the national flag,
Doug marched proudly at the head of the parade.
 - having
 - holding
 - bearing
- He's able to an enormous account of factual information in his head.
The house is well insulated and manages to the heat.
Although the old house has been completely renovated, care has been taken to
..... as many of the original features as possible.
 - absorb
 - retain
 - hold
- I think we should jump into the car and for Rome as soon as possible.
Vera has been asked to an investigation into what went wrong
on the night of the accident.
With less than a minute of the football match to go, Liam managed to
the ball into the back of the net.
 - drive
 - lead
 - head
- Much as I like David, he never seems to the things I do for him.
The value of this painting is set to greatly in the next few years.
It's difficult to certain pieces of classical music until you've
heard them a good few times.
 - appreciate
 - enjoy
 - consider



UNIT 3

USE OF ENGLISH

GOOD FATHERS

Traditionally, a good father provided for his family and acted as a disciplinarian, but he could be a pretty remote character. Today many men actively share parenthood with their wives, and many of these men consider child-rearing as important as their careers. But a father is not simply a "second mother", another nurturer and comforting presence. Good fathers have a more robust and playful relationship with their children. Research suggests that fathers are more likely than mothers to teach physical competence, adventurousness, new skills and confidence in asserting opinions. It is widely believed that children with "effective" fathers get on better with their peers and display more social confidence. They are less likely to be argumentative and do not want to force their way of doing things on others. Boys especially don't feel they have to prove themselves as the "leader", which boys without a male role model frequently do.

So, how do we rate a "good" dad? First of all, is he there? In one American study it was found that 42% of children whose parents had been divorced had not seen their fathers for over a year. A divorced dad should find some way to be included in his child's life. Further research has linked father absence to lower IQ in their children, poor school performance, delinquency and problems handling aggression. A good father should also be involved. Separate studies of children whose fathers were responsible for at least 40% of their care found that their youngsters demonstrated better thinking ability, increased empathy for others and a greater ability to rely on their own judgement. Fathers should also cheer their children's successes. People who rated high in the ability to plot their own course in life tended to have fathers who encouraged them, showed trust in their abilities and joined them in their endeavours.

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|---|
| 1. disciplinarian | <input type="text"/> | a. measure, judge |
| 2. remote | <input type="text"/> | b. distant |
| 3. nurturer | <input type="text"/> | c. praise |
| 4. rate | <input type="text"/> | d. person who cares for a growing child |
| 5. delinquency | <input type="text"/> | e. efforts |
| 6. cheer | <input type="text"/> | f. plan |
| 7. plot | <input type="text"/> | g. tendency to anti-social behaviour/crime |
| 8. endeavours | <input type="text"/> | h. person who believes in strict discipline |

B Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. How does the writer differentiate between the roles of a mother and a father?
.....
2. Explain in your own words what effect the absence of a father can have on a boy's relationship with others of his age.
.....
.....

USE OF ENGLISH



FATHERHOOD

Besides being there financially in the practical ways that have always defined fatherhood, a good father doesn't make promises he can't keep, whether it be to attend a school play or to have a game of football in the park. He also listens to his children, and is sensitive to what his children are thinking and feeling. More than anything, he must be able to approach a conflict with patience and flexibility. For example, a father who tells his daughter that she is too young for a summer job in another country might do better to explain to her his feelings about the subject, and that he would be worried if she were that far away, and arrange for her to have a job nearer home. In other words, he shows that he is capable of adjusting his opinions to suit his daughter. The special father can also create a feeling of magic for his children, by perhaps reading a bedtime story every night. Kids often see this as a wonderful way to wrap up each evening.

Lack of communication within a family can create problems. Many parents don't even tell their children about a job loss, for example. That is courting disaster and missing an opportunity to bring the family closer together. Small children are quick to sense when parents are troubled, and those unknown fears engender insecurity. It's best to level with children, and let them know the family is loving and strong enough to negotiate the bumpiest of roads. Even young children can come up with money-saving ideas, and it's important to a child's sense of self-worth to be able to contribute to the family in a crisis. Finally, mum and dad need to have a set of house rules which they stick to. Children gain a sense of security from living with two adults who love and support each other. A dad rated number one by mum is usually a dad rated number one by the kids, too.

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. conflict | <input type="text"/> | a. finish off |
| 2. flexibility | <input type="text"/> | b. produce |
| 3. wrap up | <input type="text"/> | c. give towards |
| 4. courting disaster | <input type="text"/> | d. inviting problems |
| 5. engender | <input type="text"/> | e. fight, disagreement |
| 6. negotiate | <input type="text"/> | f. keep to, not break |
| 7. contribute | <input type="text"/> | g. succeed in coping with |
| 8. stick to | <input type="text"/> | h. ability to adapt |

B Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. What does the writer mean by the phrase "approach a conflict" (line 4)?
.....
2. What phrase suggests to us that young children may be more sensitive to a family's problems than we might at first imagine?
.....
3. In a paragraph of between 50 and 70 words, summarise in your own words, as much as possible, what sort of behaviour might be expected of a child who grows up without the presence of a father.



3

READING

DRIVERS ON MOBILE PHONES

Some 12 million people in Britain own mobile phones, and we are a society on the run. To save time we conduct business, chat with friends, make arrangements - all from the car. The huge explosion in their use is causing concern. Research has shown that drivers talking on mobiles were four times more likely to have an accident than those not on the phone. Ninety-five per cent of road accidents are caused by driver error, and just the physical mechanics of dialling, answering, or replacing the handset can be dangerous. Even if you are activating only one button, you still have to take your eyes and mind off the road. More and more drivers behave as if they are at the office when on the car phone. West Midlands traffic police told of one salesman they pulled over who had his phone in one hand, order book in the other. He told them he could keep control of the car using his knees only. But mobiles are not the only distraction; sophisticated communication and navigation devices are showing up in many new car models. The Jaguar S-type is the first car with an optional satellite navigation system, which gives road directions, and a voice-activated control system for the CD, radio, air-conditioning and phone. It will call a number from an electronic phone book or answer a call at the driver's verbal command. All this still demands the driver's attention, and driving is all about concentration. It only takes a second's lapse to cause an accident and to lose a life. Should we ban hand-held devices in cars? Certainly the problem should be carefully looked into by road safety experts.

A VOCABULARY MATCH

1. on the run
2. conduct
3. cause concern
4. pull over
5. distraction
6. show up
7. optional
8. lapse

- a. carry out
- b. appear
- c. in a hurry
- d. temporary decline
- e. voluntary, not obligatory
- f. stop at side of road
- g. create reason to be worried
- h. something that takes your attention away

E Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. On the subject of whether the use of mobiles should be made illegal while driving, the writer
 - A is against the idea.
 - B does not express an opinion.
 - C is for the idea.
 - D is against the idea without certain restrictions.
2. His attitude towards other sophisticated devices in cars is that they
 - A make driving more pleasurable.
 - B should replace all hand-held devices.
 - C do not interfere with the driver.
 - D are still distracting.



WINTER DRIVING

Winter driving can be a menace. Rule number 1 for slippery surface control is to drive smoothly. Jerky movements can upset a car's traction, unsticking its tyres. So, every turn of the wheel, every touch of the brakes, every move of the accelerator must be as smooth as possible. Always test for changing surface conditions with gentle braking and don't underestimate your speed. Winter road trouble, if it does come, usually arrives in the form of a skid. Skids don't just happen; they are caused. You turn into a bend too fast, brake or accelerate too hard, and your tyres lose their grip – and you're suddenly out of control. Skid recovery is pretty simple. Ease off the accelerator, stay off the brakes, and steer where you want the car to go, not necessarily where it may be pointing as a result of the skid. There are two basic types of skids: understeer and oversteer. Understeer is a front-wheel skid. Most often you brake while turning, but the car keeps going straight. The solution: don't add more steering. Refrain from braking and don't accelerate; the tyres will regain their grip. Oversteer is a rear-wheel skid. The rear tyres lose traction, the back end slides sideways, and the car turns more than expected. Uncorrected, oversteer leads to a spin. The trick is to catch it quickly. Ease off the accelerator, stay off the brakes and steer in the direction you want to go. When the tyres regain their grip, steer just enough the other way to prevent counterskid. Then gently accelerate to help stabilise the car. Try not to stop at all on icy roads, even flat ones, since it's usually tough to get going again. If you do have to stop, use second gear when starting again, and accelerate gently for the best start-up traction.

A VOCABULARY MATCH

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|--|
| 1. jerky | <input type="checkbox"/> | a. reduce pressure on |
| 2. traction | <input type="checkbox"/> | b. fail to realise the size, importance, etc. of sth |
| 3. underestimate | <input type="checkbox"/> | c. grip |
| 4. skid | <input type="checkbox"/> | d. make steady |
| 5. out of control | <input type="checkbox"/> | e. uncontrollable sliding |
| 6. ease off | <input type="checkbox"/> | f. resist |
| 7. refrain from | <input type="checkbox"/> | g. unable to guide |
| 8. stabilise | <input type="checkbox"/> | h. with sharp, abrupt movement |

B Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. To correct a skid, you should | 2. Oversteer occurs when |
| A speed up gradually. | A only the front wheels are holding the road. |
| B brake gently. | B you turn the wheel too fast. |
| C steer in your intended direction. | C you brake while turning. |
| D steer in the direction the car is travelling. | D you try to counter a skid. |



UNIT 4

INVERSION

Every woman should marry - but under no circumstances should men.

Benjamin Disraeli

A NEGATIVE ADVERBS

- Seldom, Rarely
- Hardly (ever), Barely, Scarcely... when/before
- Never (before/again)
- Little

- The concert had only just begun when there was a power cut.
- Scarcely/Barely/Hardly had the concert begun when there was a power cut.
- That's the last time I lend him any money.
- Never again will I lend him any money.
- A car like that is a rare sight these days.
- Rarely will you see a car like that these days.
- The last thing they expected was to see him there.
- Little did they expect to see him there.

B ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS

- On no account/occasion
- At no point/time
- By no means
- In/Under no circumstances
- In few cases
- In no way/place

- Whatever you do, don't mention his divorce.
- Under no circumstances must you mention his divorce.
- I was never aware of his criminal record.
- At no point was I aware of his criminal record.

C NOT ONLY (...BUT ALSO.../...AS WELL...TOO...EITHER) NO SOONER... THAN

- He's both an artist and a singer.
- Not only is he an artist, but a singer, too.
- He neither turned up nor phoned.
- Not only did he not turn up, he didn't phone, either.
- The moment one dog stopped barking, another started.
- No sooner had one dog stopped barking than another started.

D ONLY

- Only by chance/luck
- Only on/in/at... (occasions)

- Only by luck did we manage to find the answer.
- Only on Sundays is admission to the museum free.

- Only if/by

- Only if you read the instructions will you solve this.
- Only by begging her would she agree to help.

E ONLY WHEN/IF NOT UNTIL/UNLESS

- The only hope of peace is if all parties agree to talk.
- Only when/if all parties agree to talk will there be peace.
- Not until/unless all parties agree to talk will there be peace.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. Provided you promise to take care of it, I'll let you borrow it. *Not unless...*
2. The only time you'll see her at church is at weddings and funerals. *Only...*
3. I bought this house just before the property market collapsed. *No...*
4. He wasn't just arrested for speeding, but for drunk driving as well. *Not...*
5. James doesn't stand a chance of being selected for the team if he doesn't train harder. *On no...*
6. In those days it was not very often that you would see couples holding hands in the street. *Seldom in...*
7. This is the first time it has happened. *Never...*
8. I was never asked for an opinion. *At...*
9. The light will stay on until you press this button. *Only when...*
10. Your only hope of making the train is if you take a taxi. *Only by...*

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS



INVERSION

EXPRESSING RESULT & CONDITION

E RESULT

- So/Such... (that)
- To such an extent/a degree/a point/a pitch
- To such lengths
- To such extremes
- So + adj + a/an + noun

- The damage to the ship was so bad that it could not be repaired.
- *So badly damaged was the ship that it could not be repaired.*
- *Such was the (extent of the) damage to the ship that it could not be repaired.*
- *To such an extent was the ship damaged that it could not be repaired.*
- He had such talent that he found a job immediately.
- *Such talent did he have that he found a job immediately.*
- The union's policies were so extreme that they lost all public sympathy.
- *So extreme were the union's policies that they lost all public sympathy.*
- *To such extremes did the union go that they lost all public sympathy.*
- It was such a nice day that we had a picnic.
- *It was so nice a day that we had a picnic.*

G INVERTED CONDITIONALS

- Should (you)...
- Were (he) to...
- Had (it)...

- *Should you (happen to/by any chance) come across it, will you let me know?*
- *Were your father to find out about this, he would hit the roof.*
- *Were it not for the length of the journey, I'd consider going.*
- *Had you done what I told you, we wouldn't be in this mess.*

H OTHER CASES

- Here comes Tony!
- There goes our bus!
- What a long day - am I tired!
- Try as I might, I couldn't start the car.
- On the ground floor of the museum is a bust of Zeus.
- At the back of the book can be found an index of contents.
- Walking up to the podium now is the gold medallist, Arthur Nash.
- Dangerous though/as it is/may be/might be, we'll have to risk it.

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

- There is more interest in the subject than ever before.
- *Never before has there been so much interest in the subject.*
- We had to wait forty minutes before we could see the manager.
- *Only after a forty-minute wait could we see the manager.*
- The matter stayed secret until the president resigned.
- *Not until the president's resignation was the matter made public.*
- He phones her practically every day. → *Hardly a day goes by without his/him phoning her.*
- It was ten years before I saw her again. → *Not until ten years had passed/gone by did I see her again.*
- There was no precedent for the delegate's objection. → *Never before had a delegate objected.*
- She was offered a job just after her graduation. → *No sooner had she graduated than she was offered a job.*
- Your contract is only valid after being signed. → *Only after your contract has been signed is it valid.*

ORAL PRACTICE

1. My washing machine breaks down practically every week. *Hardly...*
2. She was so moved by the sight that she wept. *So...*
3. She had to argue with them a long time before they'd let her in to see the prisoner. *Only after a...*
4. The oldest house in town stands on the corner of our street. *On the...*
5. If by any chance Rachel contacts you, would you let me know? *Should...*
6. The only thing that's stopping me from accepting the job is the distance I'd have to travel. *Were...*
7. He was so surprised that he was completely at a loss for words. *Such...*
8. I know it's expensive, but we'll have to buy it. *Expensive...*
9. There's a big argument in the office almost every week. *Hardly...*
10. The strike lasted twenty days before the management gave in. *Only after a...*



A "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. You must remember to hand back the key, whatever you do. (*account*)
On the key.
2. There's no way Nigel would have given his permission for such a thing. (*means*)
By for such a thing.
3. Whatever happens, he must not get wind of the operation. (*no*)
Under the operation.
4. There was so much panic that no one was able to keep order. (*extent*)
Such no one was able to keep order.
5. I tried to persuade her it wasn't my fault, but she refused to listen. (*might*)
Try not my fault, she refused to listen.
6. If she were to offer, I wouldn't hesitate to accept. (*chance*)
Should hesitate to accept.
7. Something seems to go wrong every day. (*by*)
Hardly wrong.
8. Only the timely arrival of a doctor saved the injured climber. (*for*)
Had a doctor, the injured climber would have died.
9. The full extent of the damage remained hidden until the smoke had cleared away. (*when*)
Only full extent of the damage be seen.
10. If she had blurted out the truth, we would have all been arrested. (*to*)
Were would have all been arrested.

B DERIVATIVES

DEATH IN THE DESERT

It had grown (0) colder as the desert dusk fell, and at this point I felt nothing but complete and absolute (1)
The sky had (2) to a blue - purple, but the moon was bright.
I would (3) have lain down and fallen into a deep sleep, but I knew this would have meant a (4) , lonely death.
The (5) of the cold at night had to be felt to be believed, and a feeling of total, desperate (6) swept over me.
We had to (7) in finding the oasis in the morning, although, like a mirage, it was probably (8) , just nothing there.
On top of all this, one of the camels had suffered a slight (9)
To be (10) , we would be lucky to get out of this alive.

APPRECIATE
EXHAUST
DARK
HAPPY
MISERY
SEVERE
HELP
SUCCESS
EXIST
INJURE
REAL



A GUIDED CLOZE TEST: FILL IN

FEELING TIRED

Because we feel tired at bedtime it is natural to assume that we sleep because we are tired. The point seems (0).....^{so}..... obvious that (1)..... anyone has ever sought to question it. Nevertheless, we must ask "tired (2)..... what?" People certainly feel tired at the end of a hard day's manual work, but it is also true that office workers feel equally tired when bedtime comes. (3)..... invalids, restricted to beds or wheelchairs, become tired as the evening wears (4)..... . Moreover, the manual worker (5)..... still feel tired even (6)..... an evening spent relaxing in front of the television or reading a book, (7)..... which seem to (8)..... a refreshing effect. There is no proven connection (9)..... physical exertion and the (10)..... for sleep. People want to sleep, however little exercise they have had. (11)..... is the desire for sleep (12)..... to mental fatigue. In fact, sleep comes more slowly to people who have had an intellectually stimulating day, (13)..... because their minds are still full of thoughts as they retire. Ironically, one way of sending (14)..... to sleep is to put him or her into a boring situation (15)..... the intellectual effort is minimal.

- | | | |
|--|---|-----------------------------------|
| very / enough / so / such | 6. though / if / after / because | 12. dependent / caused / |
| seldom / hardly / often / almost | 7. activities / actions / events / articles | based / related |
| from / that / on / of | 8. cause / make / have / do | 13. importantly / significantly / |
| Still / Even / Although / Nevertheless | 9. for / between / in / on | mainly / vaguely |
| by / on / through / out | 10. want / like / desire / hope | 14. people / him / someone / them |
| must / should / may / would | 11. Only / Seldom / Unless / Such | 15. where / which / whose / that |

B Fill each of the numbered blanks in the passage with one suitable word.

ILLITERACY

Illiteracy may be considered more as an abstract concept than a condition. When a famous English writer used (0).....^{this/the}..... word over two hundred years ago, he was actually referring to people who could (1)..... read Greek or Latin. (2)....., it seems unlikely that university examiners had (3)..... sort of disability in mind when they reported on "creeping illiteracy" in a report on their students' final examinations in 1988.

Over the years, university lecturers have (4)..... aware of an increasing tendency (5)..... grammatical sloppiness, poor spelling and general imprecision in their students' ways (6)..... writing; and sloppy writing is all (7)..... often a reflection of sloppy thinking. Their complaint was that they had (8)..... to do teaching their own subject (9)..... teaching their undergraduates to write.

Some lecturers believe that they have (10)..... duty to stress the importance of maintaining standards of clear thinking through the written word in a world dominated (11)..... visual communications and images. They (12)..... on the connection between clear thinking and a form of writing that is not (13)..... clear, but also sensitive to subtleties of meaning. The same lecturers argue that undergraduates appear to (14)..... the victims of a "softening process" that begins with the teaching of English in schools, but this point of (15)..... has, not surprisingly, caused a great deal of controversy.



UNIT 4



PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING

IMPULSE BUYING



Without a doubt a lot of people buy things on impulse and the debts they run up are beyond belief. Unfortunately I can sympathise with them. I'm well in arrears with my credit card payments, because by nature I'm a spendthrift. I'll walk into a department store and buy six dresses off the peg - I just have faith in the fact that the money will come from somewhere. By profession I'm a teacher, so I'm no millionaire, but being in fashion is of great importance to me, even at the expense of eating properly. By hook or by crook I have to have that new jacket or pair of shoes, and without a second thought, out comes the credit card. I've done everything within my power to stop myself, but nothing works. To be honest, the situation is out of hand. I've even thought of enrolling in a course to help me, but just one "On sale" sign is enough to put me on course for more spending sprees.

A FILL IN with the appropriate prepositions.

- | | | | | | | |
|------------|---|--------------|---|-----------|---|----------|
| unaffected | ⇒ | immune | ⇒ | vain | ⇒ | no avail |
| devoid | ⇒ | lacking | ⇒ | fault | ⇒ | blame |
| deficiency | ⇒ | lack | ⇒ | the whole | ⇒ | general |
| variance | ⇒ | disagreement | ⇒ | detail | ⇒ | length |



REPHRASING

- I can't understand ⇒ I'm at a loss to explain... ⇒ It's beyond me ⇒ It's incomprehensible to me ⇒ I'm baffled (by)... ⇒ (It) confounds me (why)...
- forget ⇒ can't call (sth) to mind ⇒ slip my mind ⇒ (his/her name) escapes me
- instead of ⇒ as an alternative to ⇒ rather than ⇒ in place of ⇒ as a substitute for
- cause ⇒ bring about ⇒ lead to ⇒ result in ⇒ be a consequence of ⇒ be responsible for
- contribute to ⇒ play a part/role in ⇒ make a contribution to ⇒ be a(n) (important) factor in

E "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- Picasso played a major role in the development of the 20th-century art movement. (contribution)
Picasso of the 20th-century art movement.
- Why anyone would say that baffles me. (incomprehensible)
It
- We can get round the problem only by using plastic pipes instead of copper. (in)
Only by using get round the problem.
- I just cannot understand why she said that. (loss)
I
- Never should you use dried garlic instead of fresh garlic in this recipe. (alternative)
Never should you use she said that.
- The El Niño weather pattern caused massive flooding. (consequence)
The in this recipe.
- In general, sales of records are declining. (whole)
On the El Niño weather pattern.
- The delegate spoke in great detail about the changes. (at)
The delegate are declining.
- I've tried hard to remember her name, but it has slipped my mind. (call)
Try as I the changes.
- Darwin's theory of evolution led to major changes in scientific thought. (about)
Darwin's theory of evolution mind.
..... scientific thought.

GO - SEE EXPRESSIONS



- ◇ go to sb's head: become arrogant/conceited because of sth; feel the effects of alcohol
 * Her success as an actress *went to her head* and she now has no friends. * The wine has *gone to my head*.
- ◇ go to a lot of/considerable trouble: make a great effort * They *went to a lot of trouble* to make us feel at home.
- ◇ have a lot/plenty/not much going for (one): have sth in one's favour
 * I *really enjoyed Ireland. It has a lot going for it*.
- ◇ be/have (enough) to be going on with: (sufficient) for the time being
 * We'll need to *buy some more photocopying paper soon, but we have enough to be going on with*.
- g** ◇ go short of: not have as much as one needs
 * Many people *went short of food and clothing during the war*.
- o** ◇ go halves (on): divide (a bill/cost) by two * You can't pay the whole bill. Let's *go halves on it*.
- ◇ go it alone: do sth without others' help * My brother wants to *go it alone* and start his own business.
- ◇ go to great lengths: try very hard * Investigators *went to great lengths* to establish the cause of the crash.
- ◇ go a long way to (wards): contribute significantly
 * Her sheltered childhood *goes a long way to explaining her awkwardness with people*.
- ◇ go on a spending spree: spend a lot of money in a short time
 * She *always goes on a spending spree when the sales are on*.
-
- ◇ seeing that: because * *Seeing that we're broke, we can't go out*.
- ◇ see sth/it coming: be able to predict/anticipate sth
 * I *knew he'd have a nervous breakdown. I could see it coming*.
- s** ◇ see reason: realise one's behaviour/actions are wrong/stupid
 * I *cannot convince him that he's wrong; he just will not see reason*.
- e** ◇ see the light: finally understand/see reason
 * He *wanted to drop out of university until Ursula made him see the light*.
- e** ◇ has seen better days: is old and in poor condition
 * This record player *has certainly seen better days. Let's buy a new one*.
- ◇ see to it that: make sure sth happens * *See to it that all the guests get a drink*.
- ◇ see fit to: find it appropriate to * *I can't believe you saw fit to lend him more money!*



Seeing that you asked so nicely, I'll give you the money - but how about going halves?

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- You must make sure this never happens again or there will be trouble. (see)
 Please or there will be trouble.
- Why don't we split the taxi fare? (on)
 Let's taxi fare.
- He always had everything he wanted as a child. (go)
 Never as a child.
- The cheque they got helped enormously to pay for their honeymoon. (way)
 The cheque they got honeymoon.
- This hotel could do with a facelift. (seen)
 This hotel days.
- The travel agent tried very hard to find me a convenient, cheap flight. (lengths)
 The travel agent a convenient, cheap flight.
- The new restaurant has little to recommend it. (much)
 The new restaurant it.
- He continually refused to acknowledge that he was wrong, despite the evidence. (see)
 At, despite the evidence.
- It wasn't hard for anyone to predict he'd lose his job. (coming)
 Anyone lose his job.
- We don't need to buy any more detergent just yet. (going)
 We have enough with.



A PATIENT FRIEND



Your honour, it is plainly visible how honest a person my client is.

I readily admit that I am the world's least punctual person and unless directed otherwise I am quite capable of forgetting a meeting or evening out altogether. I've managed to maintain a long-standing friendship with my best friend Anthony, even though my behaviour infuriates him. He complains bitterly every time he has to wait for an hour or two on a cold street corner, and I must admit I greatly admire him for his patience. He particularly wanted to see a film last Saturday evening which I forgot all about, having at first categorically denied that we'd ever made any arrangement to meet in the first place, and claimed the whole thing could not possibly have happened. It was plainly visible on Anthony's face that my behaviour was putting a strain on our friendship which, fortunately, was not yet irreparably damaged. I gratefully acknowledged his patience and understanding and said I was painfully aware of how difficult I must be to have as a friend.

A Match the words in bold type with the sets of adjectives/verbs.

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. readily | <input type="text"/> | a. exaggerated, vary, concerned |
| 2. bitterly | <input type="text"/> | b. accept, agree, available |
| 3. greatly | <input type="text"/> | c. sob, quarrel, lament, complain |

ADVERB COLLOCATIONS

- thinly disguised, veiled
- directly descended, responsible
- soundly defeated, based
- elegantly dressed, performed
- mutually agreeable, exclusive
- blissfully ignorant, happy, unaware

B ADJECTIVE & NOUN COLLOCATIONS (MATCH)

- | | | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|-------------|------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| I. 1. clean | <input type="text"/> | a. power | II. 1. desperate | <input type="text"/> | a. sharp |
| 2. supreme | <input type="text"/> | b. broke | 2. tax | <input type="text"/> | b. wisdom, weapons |
| 3. circumstantial | <input type="text"/> | c. shaven | 3. razor | <input type="text"/> | c. voyage, speech |
| 4. flat | <input type="text"/> | d. daylight | 4. popular | <input type="text"/> | d. evasion, relief |
| 5. broad | <input type="text"/> | e. move | 5. conventional | <input type="text"/> | e. belief, misconception |
| 6. wise | <input type="text"/> | f. evidence | 6. maiden | <input type="text"/> | f. need, measures |

C M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

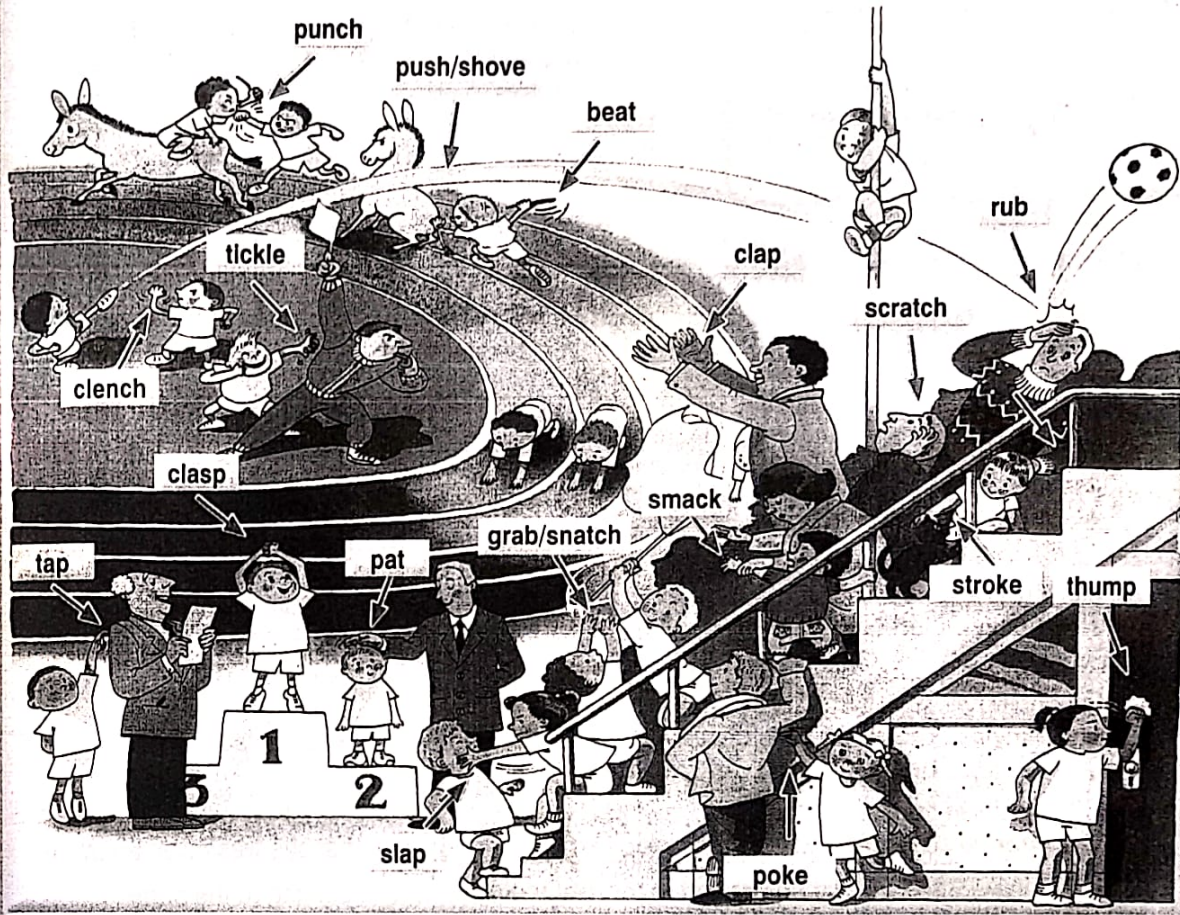
It was a freezing cold night, and the howling wind blew through me like a knife. I was in (1)..... need of a drink, but after the robbery I was flat broke. Nevertheless, I dived into the first shadowy little bar I came across in the back alley. I saw her as soon as I entered. She was (2)..... dressed and her long black hair swept down over her shoulders. I was (3)..... aware of how shabby and pathetic I looked. However, nobody seemed (4)..... concerned. She was talking to someone in rapid Italian, but he replied in German. He was complaining (5)..... about something. Suddenly she turned and looked at me "You look cold," she said. "Would you like a drink? On me, of course. This is my bar. And if you're looking for a job, I may have something." I accepted (6)..... but wondered what would happen next.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. a. grateful | b. desperate | c. supreme | d. clean |
| 2. a. elegantly | b. soundly | c. greatly | d. irreparably |
| 3. a. gratefully | b. readily | c. painfully | d. plainly |
| 4. a. bitterly | b. soundly | c. painfully | d. greatly |
| 5. a. greatly | b. readily | c. bitterly | d. broadly |
| 6. a. blissfully | b. readily | c. categorically | d. visibly |

RELATED WORDS

HAND MOVEMENTS

- ✦ a slap in the face ✦ be tickled pink ✦ a stroke of luck/fortune ✦ scratch a living/the surface (of sth)
- ✦ smack one's lips ✦ tickle sb's fancy ✦ take a lot of/some beating ✦ rub salt into the wound/sb's wounds
- ✦ poke fun at sb/sth ✦ clap eyes on ✦ when push comes to shove ✦ rub sb's nose in it



M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

A silver bat flew across the huge white circle of the midnight moon, and somewhere an owl hooted. I shivered with fear, completely lost in the cold, dark forest. Suddenly I heard a cry of crazed laughter, and a strange creature appeared in front of me. I had never (1)..... eyes on anything so weird before. It was a witch in ragged clothes of black and blood red. She laughed again, and (2)..... her lips. "Well, well, what have we got there? What a (3)..... of luck, meeting someone like you," she shrieked. "You really (4)..... my fancy, my dear. A healthy, strong young man like you would take some (5)..... and that's for sure. How would you like to work in my castle, scrubbing floors?"

"I'm not exactly tickled pink by the idea," I replied, "but tell me, how much do you pay an hour?"

"Are you (6)..... fun at me?" she screamed, jumping up and down with anger. "I hope not or I will turn you into a frog." "Scrubbing floors?" I replied, "That sounds fine. When do I start?"

- | | | | | |
|----|-------------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. | a. slapped | b. scratched | c. rubbed | d. clapped |
| 2. | a. clenched | b. smacked | c. shoved | d. patted |
| 3. | a. stroke | b. snatch | c. beat | d. pat |
| 4. | a. clasp | b. stroke | c. tickle | d. tap |
| 5. | a. beating | b. clapping | c. thumping | d. winning |
| 6. | a. pushing | b. clapping | c. poking | d. shoving |



UNIT 4

EXPRESSING...

SUCCESS

- go (off) with a bang
- make it/one's mark/a killing/a go of it/sth
- be on the up and up go up in the world
- fall/land on one's feet have (got) it made



What can I say, Pete? The boss says this system will stop people leaving work early while he's out of town.

FAILURE

- fight a losing battle
- come to nothing/grief
- be a lost cause
- go wrong fall through
- be a flop/disaster/fiasco/shambles
- draw a blank
- go under/bust/to the wall
- fold go bankrupt

PRESENCE/ABSENCE

- wait in the wings play truant
- on the spot behind the scenes
- as large as life in the flesh
- in the public eye be out of town
- on leave put in an appearance
- in sb's presence/absence
- make one's presence known/felt
- when/as soon as sb's back is turned
- do a disappearing act

A GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

1. I should keep my on that child if I were you.
People in the public have very little private life.
It was calm in the of the storm, but only for a while!
2. Some of the boys were the fool and your clock got broken, Mum.
Your teacher tells me you've been truant from school again, Billy.
It's no use for time searching for your homework in your bag, because we both know you haven't done it.
3. Ladies and gentlemen, there's no for alarm so please remain in your seats.
Murphy is a lost so I'm not wasting any more of my time trying to help him.
The money we collected went to a good so I didn't mind all the hard work.
4. She certainly up in the world once she started her own business, didn't she?
Everything wrong today so I've come home early.
The party off with a bang when Father Christmas arrived in a police car!
5. You'd know if Harry were here because he likes to make his felt.
Once I was in the of the headmaster, I found I couldn't tell him a lie.
She showed so much of mind in the face of danger, that she was given an award.
6. Jill's face when we told her that Mark wasn't coming to the party.
Old Mr Baker's health into decline when he retired.
We were going on a trip to Ireland but all our plans through at the last minute.

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. The firm had a lot of success in the soft drinks market. (*killing*)
The firm market.
2. Sergeant Tucker is away until the end of the month. (*leave*)
Sergeant Tucker of the month.
3. The office staff begin gossiping the moment the boss leaves. (*back*)
As the office staff begin gossiping.
4. There are several other people ready to do this job if you can't. (*wings*)
If you can't do this job, there are several can.
5. The press claim he was present when the signing took place. (*spot*)
According when the signing took place.
6. You'll have no success if you think you can make her change her mind. (*losing*)
You you can make her change her mind.
7. He only showed up at the funeral because he knew it would be televised. (*in*)
If it had not been televised at the funeral.
8. They have had a lot of problems, but they're trying to make their marriage successful. (*go*)
Despite their many problems, their marriage.

USE OF ENGLISH



GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

SET A (based on PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING, GO - SEE EXPRESSIONS, RELATED WORDS)

- The boss was to death when he read our poem about him.
Katerina was pink when the doctor told her she was expecting twins.
That funny little car has Gail's fancy and she's going to buy one just like it.
- I think we've the last of him for a while. You really frightened him.
Those old boots of yours have better days, haven't they?
Since Bert has fit to give our steak to the dog, he can go to bed without any dinner.
- Angela scored two goals and Mary one better and scored three.
Lucy to a lot of trouble to find the exact colour you wanted.
The champagne to Julie's head and she jumped on the table and began to dance.
- Her face looked very sore where the cat had her.
The old man has a living for years on that tiny farm, yet he's quite happy there.
So far we've only the surface and there's still a great deal of work to be done.
- You haven't done a(n) of work all day, have you?
The telephone rang on the of midnight.
What a(n) of luck meeting you here!
- The Titanic didn't change in time to miss the iceberg.
If we win the next match, boys, we'll be on for the Cup Final.
Joanna hated living in the city at first but in the of time she got used to it.

SET B (guided)

- When I saw the naked foot in the light of the lamp, my ran cold. ♣ heart
There's been bad between them since he married the girl Phil loved. ♣ blood
It really makes my boil to see cruelty to animals. ♣ feelings
- Whose is it to deal the cards? ♣ go
You did Emma a good by looking after her baby. ♣ job
Rescue efforts were hindered at every by appalling weather conditions. ♣ turn
- It's time you got your together and did some work. ♣ trick
Adam's done a disappearing and we can't find him anywhere. ♣ act
Students sometimes get caught in the of trying to cheat in exams. ♣ show
- He's the best student in the class by a(n) way. ♣ far
The game isn't finished yet, not by a(n) chalk. ♣ long
Dad's getting a bit in the tooth to be playing football. ♣ old
- The with David is he never does his homework. ♣ trouble
My grandmother has had with her feet for years. ♣ problem
Some people are just looking for when they go to a football match. ♣ fault
- He carried on the business alone but his wasn't really in it. ♣ mind
My was in my mouth the first time I went skydiving. ♣ heart
I said I'd help her but I had a change of when I saw ♣ head
how much work was involved.



CHECK OUT THAT SUPERMARKET

The way a supermarket is laid out, how goods are positioned, the special displays and offers, are all part of food-retailing science, in which nothing is left to chance. What may seem a random assortment of goods is actually a finely-tuned selling machine. The subtle psychology starts working from the moment you walk in – to what appears to be an indoor street market; islands piled high with colourful fruit, vegetables and cut flowers. Customers are given an impression of brightness and freshness, and with apparent free will can select their own produce. You are indeed free to choose your own carrots, but you usually end up buying more than if they were packaged. As in most supermarkets, aisles are wide here to encourage browsing and spending. Stores make a high profit on fresh produce, which is another reason why you come across it first. Items always sell better from aisle-end displays than from ordinary shelves as the shoppers have to slow down to turn into the next aisle, so there is more time for the products on the end to catch their attention. The next best position is eye-level on the shelves. Supermarkets use these for higher profit margin goods, or for fast-selling items or those lines to which they want to draw their customers' attention. Lower priced goods, such as sugar and flour, tend to get placed on the lower shelves. Goods are always tightly packed. Sunflower oil, for example, sells better when row upon row of bright yellow bottles are crammed along a full shelf, as the colour is eye-catching and attractive.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|--|
| 1. laid out | <input type="text"/> | a. finish by |
| 2. left to chance | <input type="text"/> | b. not planned |
| 3. random | <input type="text"/> | c. arranged |
| 4. end up | <input type="text"/> | d. attract somebody |
| 5. aisles | <input type="text"/> | e. haphazard, accidental |
| 6. browsing | <input type="text"/> | f. passageways |
| 7. catch sb's attention | <input type="text"/> | g. amount made in excess of original costs |
| 8. profit margin | <input type="text"/> | h. looking without buying |

Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. Explain in your own words why the writer has chosen to use the expression "apparent free will" (line 6).
.....
2. What image of supermarkets does the writer create?
.....
.....



SPEND, SPEND, SPEND

Some of the supermarket's product lines are essential, and their cost is watched closely by regular customers. Supermarkets raise these prices at their peril. Conversely, people are willing to pay a premium for the convenience of pre-prepared foods. A whole chicken, quartered and in a tray, costs £1.26 a pound, but by buying the whole chicken the cost drops to 89p a pound. When you are in a supermarket, you may think you are moving of your own free will, but your every move is anticipated. Basic essentials are placed well apart and towards the back, so that when you are looking for them, you are 'led' past appealing, more expensive items. Going towards the milk you come to the frozen ready foods section, which are expensive. Another way of "triggering" impulse buys is cross-merchandising - placing expensive seafood cocktail sauce next to the shrimps, or gravy and stuffing mixes above the meat. Of course, a supermarket doesn't want to make finding things too convenient; the longer a shopper stays in a store, the more he or she spends. In many supermarkets, the delicious smells of home-baked bread lures you towards the bakery at the far end. On the way, you pass non-food sections such as toiletries and household goods, where mark-ups are amongst the highest in the store. Wine and spirits are also located at the far end, largely for security reasons. And once you have completed your essential food shopping, you are psychologically more relaxed and ready to add a bottle of wine or some beer to your trolley as a treat. At the check-out counters you will find sweets and glossy magazines to tempt you into that final impulse buy. Some people would claim all this is cheating, but it is giving shoppers what they want at an acceptable price. Perhaps shoppers have to learn to be more discerning.

line 9

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. at sb's peril | <input type="text"/> | a. foreseen |
| 2. pay a premium | <input type="text"/> | b. at risk of (losing customers) |
| 3. anticipated | <input type="text"/> | c. pay a lot |
| 4. triggering | <input type="text"/> | d. strongly attracts |
| 5. lures | <input type="text"/> | e. activating, starting |
| 6. mark-ups | <input type="text"/> | f. special pleasure |
| 7. treat | <input type="text"/> | g. aware, discriminating |
| 8. discerning | <input type="text"/> | h. amounts added to cost price |

B Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. According to the writer, why is the geographical location of many items so important?

2. How would you explain the expression "impulse buys" (line 9)?

3. In a paragraph of between 50 and 70 words, summarise in your own words as far as possible, what techniques a supermarket will employ to make customers buy more.



FATIGUE

One in five people has trouble sleeping, and one in fifteen has chronic insomnia. It's rare to be able to sleep like a log every night and it's only natural to have sleepless nights when you are stressed out or ill. If that's not the reason, avoid stimulants like caffeine within six hours of bedtime, alcohol between one and two hours and cut down on cigarettes. Go to bed only when you are tired; if you are still tossing and turning after twenty minutes or so, get up and read or watch TV until you feel like nodding off.

Six percent of men and fourteen percent of women are run down because of iron-deficiency anaemia; their blood has too little haemoglobin, the molecule that carries oxygen to cells, and this can cause tiredness. Another reason for loss of sleep is apnoea, a snoring sickness. During an episode of obstructive sleep apnoea, the upper airway collapses, cutting off breathing. This is signalled by raucous snoring, followed by gasping and waking. People with apnoea may wake up dozens of times a night, often unknowingly. The fractured sleep leaves them exhausted as they drift in and out of sleep. Clinical depression can also cause fatigue. This condition is thought to be caused by an imbalance in the brain chemicals that influence mood and behaviour. Someone who's depressed often feels worn out in the morning, and the tiredness tends to come and go. Depression-fatigued people typically lack motivation to do things they normally enjoy. Often they can't concentrate, remember things or make decisions.

Doctors aren't sure what causes chronic fatigue syndrome, but people with this ailment aren't just tired; their fatigue is debilitating, keeping them away from work for six weeks or longer. It can be accompanied by muscle pain, sore throat, tender lymph nodes, headaches and impaired memory. Finally, when you get an infection, you produce proteins called cytokines that help white blood cells devour bacteria and other invaders. The problem is they lay you low, too. So, if you've been ill lately or had a fever, go slow with the activities and get plenty of rest.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

1. stimulants
2. nodding off
3. run down
4. raucous
5. imbalance
6. worn out
7. ailment
8. debilitating

- a. very tired
- b. in poor health
- c. illness
- d. lack of balance
- e. loud, rough sounding
- f. making very weak
- g. dozing, falling asleep
- h. something that arouses physiological activity

Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. Clinical depression is probably caused by
 - A external influences.
 - B internal bodily malfunction.
 - C iron deficiency.
 - D constant exhaustion.

2. Which phrase that the writer uses means an uncomfortable night's sleep?
 - A toss and turn
 - B come and go
 - C raucous snoring
 - D sleep like a log



FEELING NERVOUS

At times we find ourselves in situations that make us feel nervous. Perhaps we're afraid of saying foolish things at a party, stumbling over a presentation at work or going blank during a test. For some people the anxiety is so severe that it is personally and professionally incapacitating. But you can increase your social confidence. First of all, don't hide your feelings – be honest. If you feel insecure, admit it. Such frankness is a good way to bring others closer to you. Also learn to deal with anxiety. Break the task that worries you into small steps, and face them one at a time. Once you have started something, you'll find you can cope much better than you thought. Many of us are forced to talk to people in uncomfortable situations. Maybe it's your new boss or your future in-laws. What do you say when your mind goes blank? Make the other person the focus of the conversation. All most people want is for you to pay attention to them. Psychiatrists and psychologists make handsome livings nodding their heads knowingly and asking a few questions. If they can get away with it, so can you.

line 12

Turn your anxiety into energy. Focus on presenting your ideas with force and conviction. You reduce anxiety by believing in yourself, and having the courage to express your feelings. One of our most crippling social fears is that of not measuring up. Perhaps you feel you won't impress others because they are more confident, successful, intelligent or attractive than you. Such thinking is misguided. The secret of doing well with others is accepting yourself. No matter what you are like, some people like you and others couldn't care less. Nobody gets accepted by everyone. But far more people will be attracted to you if you accept yourself.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. stumbling over | <input type="text"/> | a. disabling, damaging |
| 2. going blank | <input type="text"/> | b. confused in thought |
| 3. incapacitating | <input type="text"/> | c. manage |
| 4. cope | <input type="text"/> | d. centre, main attraction |
| 5. focus | <input type="text"/> | e. taking away strength, ability |
| 6. knowingly | <input type="text"/> | f. everything going out of your head |
| 7. crippling | <input type="text"/> | g. faltering nervously when doing sth |
| 8. misguided | <input type="text"/> | h. in an understanding manner |

Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. The writer's intention when he writes "if they can get away with it" (line 12) is to be | 2. He says that to be fulfilled you should show |
| A sneering. | A self-assurance. |
| B bitter. | B courage. |
| C ironic. | C boldness. |
| D taunting. | D daring. |



UNIT 4



INVERSION

Every woman should marry - but under no circumstances should men.

Benjamin Disraeli

A NEGATIVE ADVERBS

- Seldom, Rarely
- Hardly (ever), Barely, Scarcely... when/before
- Never (before/again)
- Little

- The concert had only just begun when there was a power cut.
- ⇒ Scarcely/Barely/Hardly had the concert begun when there was a power cut.
- That's the last time I lend him any money.
- ⇒ Never again will I lend him any money.
- A car like that is a rare sight these days.
- ⇒ Rarely will you see a car like that these days.
- The last thing they expected was to see him there.
- ⇒ Little did they expect to see him there.

B ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS

- On no account/occasion
- At no point/time
- By no means
- In/Under no circumstances
- In few cases
- In no way/place

- Whatever you do, don't mention his divorce.
- ⇒ Under no circumstances must you mention his divorce.
- I was never aware of his criminal record.
- ⇒ At no point was I aware of his criminal record.

C NOT ONLY (...BUT ALSO.../...AS WELL...TOO...EITHER) NO SOONER... THAN

- He's both an artist and a singer.
- ⇒ Not only is he an artist, but a singer, too.
- He neither turned up nor phoned.
- ⇒ Not only did he not turn up, he didn't phone, either.
- The moment one dog stopped barking, another started.
- ⇒ No sooner had one dog stopped barking than another started.

D ONLY

- Only by chance/luck
- Only on/in/at... (occasions)

- Only by luck did we manage to find the answer.
- Only on Sundays is admission to the museum free.
- Only if you read the instructions will you solve this.
- Only by begging her would she agree to help.

E ONLY WHEN/IF NOT UNTIL/UNLESS

- The only hope of peace is if all parties agree to talk.
- ⇒ Only when/if all parties agree to talk will there be peace.
- ⇒ Not until/unless all parties agree to talk will there be peace.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. Provided you promise to take care of it, I'll let you borrow it. *Not unless...*
2. The only time you'll see her at church is at weddings and funerals. *Only...*
3. I bought this house just before the property market collapsed. *No...*
4. He wasn't just arrested for speeding, but for drunk driving as well. *Not...*
5. James doesn't stand a chance of being selected for the team if he doesn't train harder. *On no...*
6. In those days it was not very often that you would see couples holding hands in the street. *Seldom in...*
7. This is the first time it has happened. *Never...*
8. I was never asked for an opinion. *At...*
9. The light will stay on until you press this button. *Only when...*
10. Your only hope of making the train is if you take a taxi. *Only by...*



GRAMMAR ANALYSIS



INVERSION

EXPRESSING RESULT & CONDITION

F RESULT

- ▶ So/Such... (that)
- ▶ To such an extent/a degree/a point/a pitch
- ▶ To such lengths
- ▶ To such extremes
- ▶ So + adj + a/an + noun

- ▶ The damage to the ship was so bad that it could not be repaired.
- ⇒ *So badly damaged was the ship that it could not be repaired.*
- ⇒ *Such was the (extent of the) damage to the ship that it could not be repaired.*
- ⇒ *To such an extent was the ship damaged that it could not be repaired.*
- ▶ He had such talent that he found a job immediately.
- ⇒ *Such talent did he have that he found a job immediately.*
- ▶ The union's policies were so extreme that they lost all public sympathy.
- ⇒ *So extreme were the union's policies that they lost all public sympathy.*
- ⇒ *To such extremes did the union go that they lost all public sympathy.*
- ▶ It was such a nice day that we had a picnic.
- ⇒ *It was so nice a day that we had a picnic.*

G INVERTED CONDITIONALS

- ▶ Should (you)...
- ▶ Were (he) to...
- ▶ Had (it)...

- ▶ *Should you (happen to/by any chance) come across it, will you let me know?*
- ▶ *Were your father to find out about this, he would hit the roof.*
- ▶ *Were it not for the length of the journey, I'd consider going.*
- ▶ *Had you done what I told you, we wouldn't be in this mess.*

H OTHER CASES

- ▶ *Here comes Tony!*
- ▶ *There goes our bus!*
- ▶ *What a long day - am I tired!*
- ▶ *Try as I might, I couldn't start the car.*
- ▶ *On the ground floor of the museum is a bust of Zeus.*
- ▶ *At the back of the book can be found an index of contents.*
- ▶ *Walking up to the podium now is the gold medalist, Arthur Nash.*
- ▶ *Dangerous though/as it is/may be/might be, we'll have to risk it.*

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

- ▶ There is more interest in the subject than ever before.
- ⇒ *Never before has there been so much interest in the subject.*
- ▶ We had to wait forty minutes before we could see the manager.
- ⇒ *Only after a forty-minute wait could we see the manager.*
- ▶ The matter stayed secret until the president resigned.
- ⇒ *Not until the president's resignation was the matter made public.*
- ▶ He phones her practically every day. ⇒ *Hardly a day goes by without his/him phoning her.*
- ▶ It was ten years before I saw her again. ⇒ *Not until ten years had passed/gone by did I see her again.*
- ▶ There was no precedent for the delegate's objection. ⇒ *Never before had a delegate objected.*
- ▶ She was offered a job just after her graduation. ⇒ *No sooner had she graduated than she was offered a job.*
- ▶ Your contract is only valid after being signed. ⇒ *Only after your contract has been signed is it valid.*

ORAL PRACTICE

1. My washing machine breaks down practically every week. *Hardly...*
2. She was so moved by the sight that she wept. *So...*
3. She had to argue with them a long time before they'd let her in to see the prisoner. *Only after a...*
4. The oldest house in town stands on the corner of our street. *On the...*
5. If by any chance Rachel contacts you, would you let me know? *Should...*
6. The only thing that's stopping me from accepting the job is the distance I'd have to travel. *Were...*
7. He was so surprised that he was completely at a loss for words. *Such...*
8. I know it's expensive, but we'll have to buy it. *Expensive...*
9. There's a big argument in the office almost every week. *Hardly...*
10. The strike lasted twenty days before the management gave in. *Only after a...*



A "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. You must remember to hand back the key, whatever you do. (*account*)
On the key.
2. There's no way Nigel would have given his permission for such a thing. (*means*)
By for such a thing.
3. Whatever happens, he must not get wind of the operation. (*no*)
Under the operation.
4. There was so much panic that no one was able to keep order. (*extent*)
Such no one was able to keep order.
5. I tried to persuade her it wasn't my fault, but she refused to listen. (*might*)
Try not my fault, she refused to listen.
6. If she were to offer, I wouldn't hesitate to accept. (*chance*)
Should hesitate to accept.
7. Something seems to go wrong every day. (*by*)
Hardly wrong.
8. Only the timely arrival of a doctor saved the injured climber. (*for*)
Had a doctor, the injured climber would have died.
9. The full extent of the damage remained hidden until the smoke had cleared away. (*when*)
Only full extent of the damage be seen.
10. If she had blurted out the truth, we would have all been arrested. (*to*)
Were would have all been arrested.

B DERIVATIVES

DEATH IN THE DESERT

It had grown (0)..... *appreciably* colder as the desert dusk fell, and at this point I felt nothing but complete and absolute (1).....

The sky had (2)..... to a blue - purple, but the moon was bright.

I would (3)..... have lain down and fallen into a deep sleep, but I knew this would have meant a (4)....., lonely death.

The (5)..... of the cold at night had to be felt to be believed, and a feeling of total, desperate (6)..... swept over me.

We had to (7)..... in finding the oasis in the morning, although, like a mirage, it was probably (8)....., just nothing there.

On top of all this, one of the camels had suffered a slight (9).....

To be (10)....., we would be lucky to get out of this alive.

APPRECIATE
EXHAUST
DARK
HAPPY
MISERY
SEVERE
HELP
SUCCESS
EXIST
INJURE
REAL

USE OF ENGLISH



A GUIDED CLOZE TEST: **FILL IN**

FEELING TIRED

Because we feel tired at bedtime it is natural to assume that we sleep because we are tired. The point seems (0).....^{so}..... obvious that (1)..... anyone has ever sought to question it. Nevertheless, we must ask "tired (2)..... what?" People certainly feel tired at the end of a hard day's manual work, but it is also true that office workers feel equally tired when bedtime comes. (3)..... invalids, restricted to beds or wheelchairs, become tired as the evening wears (4)..... . Moreover, the manual worker (5)..... still feel tired even (6)..... an evening spent relaxing in front of the television or reading a book, (7)..... which seem to (8)..... a refreshing effect. There is no proven connection (9) physical exertion and the (10)..... for sleep. People want to sleep, however little exercise they have had. (11)..... is the desire for sleep (12)..... to mental fatigue. In fact, sleep comes more slowly to people who have had an intellectually stimulating day, (13)..... because their minds are still full of thoughts as they retire. Ironically, one way of sending (14)..... to sleep is to put him or her into a boring situation (15)..... the intellectual effort is minimal.

very / enough / so / such
seldom / hardly / often / almost
from / that / on / of
Still / Even / Although / Nevertheless
by / on / through / out
must / should / may / would

6. though / if / after / because
7. activities / actions / events / articles
8. cause / make / have / do
9. for / between / in / on
10. want / like / desire / hope
11. Only / Seldom / Unless / Such

12. dependent / caused /
based / related
13. importantly / significantly /
mainly / vaguely
14. people / him / someone / them
15. where / which / whose / that

B Fill each of the numbered blanks in the passage with one suitable word.

ILLITERACY

Illiteracy may be considered more as an abstract concept than a condition. When a famous English writer used (0).....^{this/the}..... word over two hundred years ago, he was actually referring to people who could (1)..... read Greek or Latin. (2)....., it seems unlikely that university examiners had (3)..... sort of disability in mind when they reported on "creeping illiteracy" in a report on their students' final examinations in 1988.

Over the years, university lecturers have (4)..... aware of an increasing tendency (5)..... grammatical sloppiness, poor spelling and general imprecision in their students' ways (6)..... writing; and sloppy writing is all (7)..... often a reflection of sloppy thinking. Their complaint was that they had (8)..... to do teaching their own subject (9)..... teaching their undergraduates to write.

Some lecturers believe that they have (10)..... duty to stress the importance of maintaining standards of clear thinking through the written word in a world dominated (11)..... visual communications and images. They (12)..... on the connection between clear thinking and a form of writing that is not (13)..... clear, but also sensitive to subtleties of meaning. The same lecturers argue that undergraduates appear to (14)..... the victims of a "softening process" that begins with the teaching of English in schools, but this point of (15)..... has, not surprisingly, caused a great deal of controversy.



UNIT 4



PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING

IMPULSE BUYING



Much as I sympathise with you Mr Hingis, I really must ask you if you're insured.

Without a doubt a lot of people buy things on impulse and the debts they run up are beyond belief. Unfortunately I can sympathise with them. I'm well in arrears with my credit card payments, because by nature I'm a spendthrift. I'll walk into a department store and buy six dresses off the peg - I just have faith in the fact that the money will come from somewhere. By profession I'm a teacher, so I'm no millionaire, but being in fashion is of great importance to me, even at the expense of eating properly. By hook or by crook I have to have that new jacket or pair of shoes, and without a second thought, out comes the credit card. I've done everything within my power to stop myself, but nothing works. To be honest, the situation is out of hand. I've even thought of enrolling in a course to help me, but just one "On sale" sign is enough to put me on course for more spending sprees.

A) FILL IN with the appropriate prepositions.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| ➤ unaffected | ⇨ immune | ➤ vain | ⇨ no avail |
| ➤ devoid | ⇨ lacking | ➤ fault | ⇨ blame |
| ➤ deficiency | ⇨ lack | ➤ the whole | ⇨ general |
| ➤ variance | ⇨ disagreement | ➤ detail | ⇨ length |



Now, just hold on a second... her name has slipped my mind.

REPHRASING

- I can't understand ⇨ I'm at a loss to explain... ⇨ It's beyond me ⇨ It's incomprehensible to me ⇨ I'm baffled (by)... ⇨ (It) confounds me (why)...
- forget ⇨ can't call (sth) to mind ⇨ slip my mind ⇨ (his/her name) escapes me
- instead of ⇨ as an alternative to ⇨ rather than ⇨ in place of ⇨ as a substitute for
- cause ⇨ bring about ⇨ lead to ⇨ result in ⇨ be a consequence of ⇨ be responsible for
- contribute to ⇨ play a part/role in ⇨ make a contribution to ⇨ be a(n) (important) factor in

B) "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- Picasso played a major role in the development of the 20th-century art movement. (contribution)
Picasso of the 20th-century art movement.
- Why anyone would say that baffles me. (incomprehensible)
It would say that.
- We can get round the problem only by using plastic pipes instead of copper. (in)
Only by using get round the problem.
- I just cannot understand why she said that. (loss)
I she said that.
- Never should you use dried garlic instead of fresh garlic in this recipe. (alternative)
Never should you use in this recipe.
- The El Niño weather pattern caused massive flooding. (consequence)
The the El Niño weather pattern.
- In general, sales of records are declining. (whole)
On are declining.
- The delegate spoke in great detail about the changes. (at)
The delegate the changes.
- I've tried hard to remember her name, but it has slipped my mind. (call)
Try as I mind.
- Darwin's theory of evolution led to major changes in scientific thought. (about)
Darwin's theory of evolution scientific thought.

GO - SEE EXPRESSIONS



- ◇ go to sb's head: become arrogant/conceited because of sth; feel the effects of alcohol
Her success as an actress went to her head and she now has no friends. The wine has gone to my head.
- ◇ go to a lot of/considerable trouble: make a great effort *They went to a lot of trouble to make us feel at home.*
- ◇ have a lot/plenty/not much going for (one): have sth in one's favour
I really enjoyed Ireland. It has a lot going for it.
- ◇ be/have (enough) to be going on with: (sufficient) for the time being
We'll need to buy some more photocopying paper soon, but we have enough to be going on with.
- ◇ go short of: not have as much as one needs
Many people went short of food and clothing during the war.
- ◇ go halves (on): divide (a bill/cost) by two *You can't pay the whole bill. Let's go halves on it.*
- ◇ go it alone: do sth without others' help *My brother wants to go it alone and start his own business.*
- ◇ go to great lengths: try very hard *Investigators went to great lengths to establish the cause of the crash.*
- ◇ go a long way to(wards): contribute significantly
Her sheltered childhood goes a long way to explaining her awkwardness with people.
- ◇ go on a spending spree: spend a lot of money in a short time
She always goes on a spending spree when the sales are on.



Seeing that you asked so nicely, I'll give you the money - but how about going halves?

- ◇ seeing that: because *Seeing that we're broke, we can't go out.*
- ◇ see sth/it coming: be able to predict/anticipate sth
I knew he'd have a nervous breakdown. I could see it coming.
- ◇ see reason: realise one's behaviour/actions are wrong/stupid
I cannot convince him that he's wrong; he just will not see reason.
- ◇ see the light: finally understand/see reason
He wanted to drop out of university until Ursula made him see the light.
- ◇ has seen better days: is old and in poor condition
This record player has certainly seen better days. Let's buy a new one.
- ◇ see to it that: make sure sth happens *See to it that all the guests get a drink.*
- ◇ see fit to: find it appropriate to *I can't believe you saw fit to lend him more money!*

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. You must make sure this never happens again or there will be trouble. (see)
 Please or there will be trouble.
2. Why don't we split the taxi fare? (on)
 Let's taxi fare.
3. He always had everything he wanted as a child. (go)
 Never as a child.
4. The cheque they got helped enormously to pay for their honeymoon. (way)
 The cheque they got honeymoon.
5. This hotel could do with a facelift. (seen)
 This hotel days.
6. The travel agent tried very hard to find me a convenient, cheap flight. (lengths)
 The travel agent a convenient, cheap flight.
7. The new restaurant has little to recommend it. (much)
 The new restaurant it.
8. He continually refused to acknowledge that he was wrong, despite the evidence. (see)
 At despite the evidence.
9. It wasn't hard for anyone to predict he'd lose his job. (coming)
 Anyone lose his job.
10. We don't need to buy any more detergent just yet. (going)
 We have enough with.

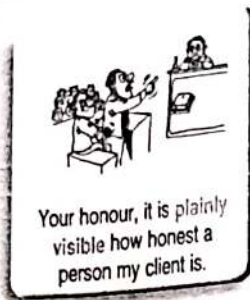


UNIT 4



ADVERBS - COLLOCATION

A PATIENT FRIEND



I readily admit that I am the world's least punctual person and unless directed otherwise I am quite capable of forgetting a meeting or evening out altogether. I've managed to maintain a long-standing friendship with my best friend Anthony, even though my behaviour infuriates him. He complains bitterly every time he has to wait for an hour or two on a cold street corner, and I must admit I greatly admire him for his patience. He particularly wanted to see a film last Saturday evening which I forgot all about, having at first categorically denied that we'd ever made any arrangement to meet in the first place, and claimed the whole thing could not possibly have happened. It was plainly visible on Anthony's face that my behaviour was putting a strain on our friendship which, fortunately, was not yet irreparably damaged. I gratefully acknowledged his patience and understanding and said I was painfully aware of how difficult I must be to have as a friend.

A Match the words in bold type with the sets of adjectives/verbs.

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. readily | <input type="text"/> | a. exaggerated, vary, concerned |
| 2. bitterly | <input type="text"/> | b. accept, agree, available |
| 3. greatly | <input type="text"/> | c. sob, quarrel, lament, complain |

ADVERB COLLOCATIONS

- thinly disguised, veiled
- directly descended, responsible
- soundly defeated, based
- elegantly dressed, performed
- mutually agreeable, exclusive
- blissfully ignorant, happy, unaware

B ADJECTIVE & NOUN COLLOCATIONS (MATCH)

- | | | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|-------------|------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| I. 1. clean | <input type="text"/> | a. power | II. 1. desperate | <input type="text"/> | a. sharp |
| 2. supreme | <input type="text"/> | b. broke | 2. tax | <input type="text"/> | b. wisdom, weapons |
| 3. circumstantial | <input type="text"/> | c. shaven | 3. razor | <input type="text"/> | c. voyage, speech |
| 4. flat | <input type="text"/> | d. daylight | 4. popular | <input type="text"/> | d. evasion, relief |
| 5. broad | <input type="text"/> | e. move | 5. conventional | <input type="text"/> | e. belief, misconception |
| 6. wise | <input type="text"/> | f. evidence | 6. maiden | <input type="text"/> | f. need, measures |

C M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

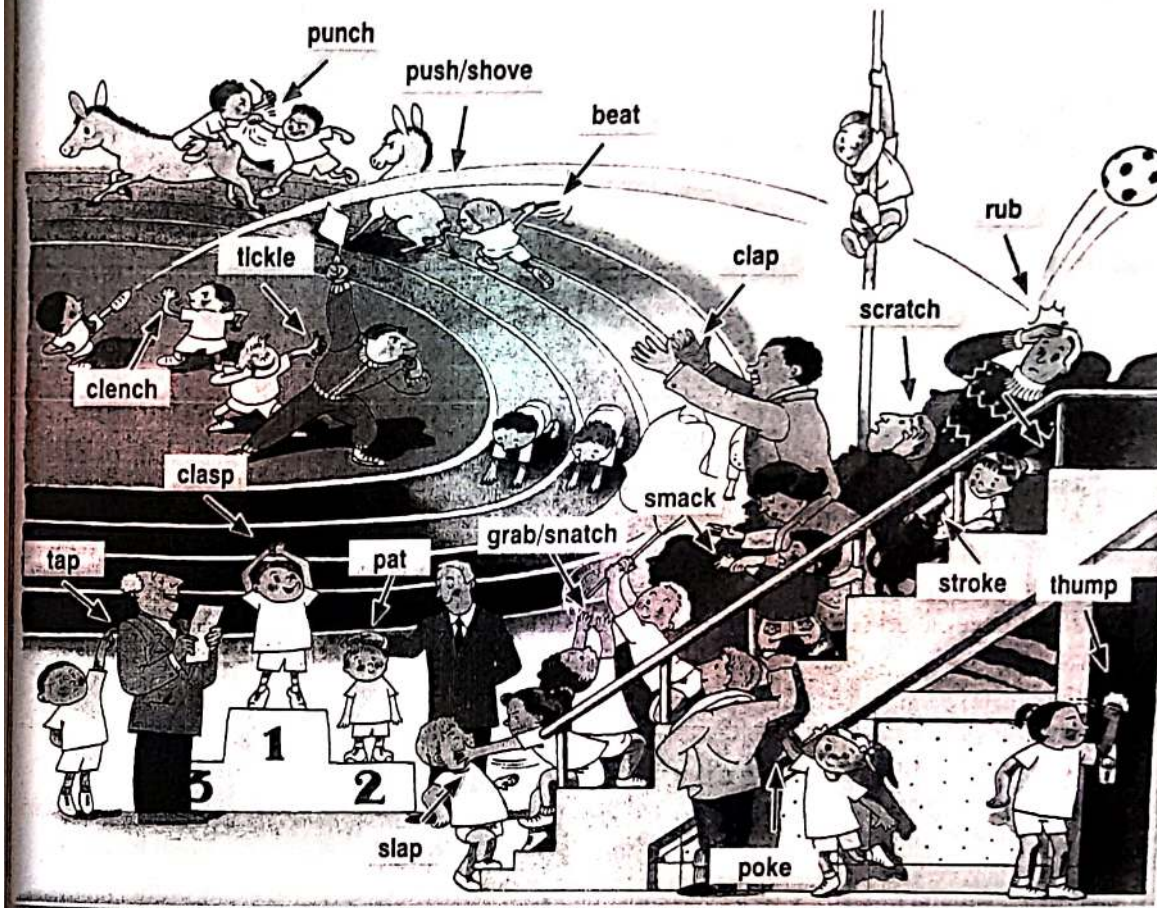
It was a freezing cold night, and the howling wind blew through me like a knife. I was in (1)..... need of a drink, but after the robbery I was flat broke. Nevertheless, I dived into the first shadowy little bar I came across in the back alley. I saw her as soon as I entered. She was (2)..... dressed and her long black hair swept down over her shoulders. I was (3)..... aware of how shabby and pathetic I looked. However, nobody seemed (4)..... concerned. She was talking to someone in rapid Italian, but he replied in German. He was complaining (5)..... about something. Suddenly she turned and looked at me "You look cold," she said. "Would you like a drink? On me, of course. This is my bar. And if you're looking for a job, I may have something." I accepted (6)..... but wondered what would happen next.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. a. grateful | b. desperate | c. supreme | d. clean |
| 2. a. elegantly | b. soundly | c. greatly | d. irreparably |
| 3. a. gratefully | b. readily | c. painfully | d. plainly |
| 4. a. bitterly | b. soundly | c. painfully | d. greatly |
| 5. a. greatly | b. readily | c. bitterly | d. broadly |
| 6. a. blissfully | b. readily | c. categorically | d. visibly |

RELATED WORDS

HAND MOVEMENTS

- a slap in the face • be tickled pink • a stroke of luck/fortune • scratch a living/the surface (of sth)
- smack one's lips • tickle sb's fancy • take a lot of/some beating • rub salt into the wound/sb's wounds
- poke fun at sb/sth • clap eyes on • when push comes to shove • rub sb's nose in it



M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

A silver bat flew across the huge white circle of the midnight moon, and somewhere an owl hooted. I shivered with fear, completely lost in the cold, dark forest. Suddenly I heard a cry of crazed laughter, and a strange creature appeared in front of me. I had never (1)..... eyes on anything so weird before. It was a witch in ragged clothes of black and blood red. She laughed again, and (2)..... her lips. "Well, well, what have we got there? What a (3)..... of luck, meeting someone like you," she shrieked. "You really (4)..... my fancy, my dear. A healthy, strong young man like you would take some (5)..... and that's for sure. How would you like to work in my castle, scrubbing floors?"

"I'm not exactly tickled pink by the idea," I replied, "but tell me, how much do you pay an hour?"

"Are you (6)..... fun at me?" she screamed, jumping up and down with anger. "I hope not or I will turn you into a frog." "Scrubbing floors?" I replied, "That sounds fine. When do I start?"

- | | | | | |
|----|-------------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. | a. slapped | b. scratched | c. rubbed | d. clapped |
| 2. | a. clenched | b. smacked | c. shoved | d. patted |
| 3. | a. stroke | b. snatch | c. beat | d. pat |
| 4. | a. clasp | b. stroke | c. tickle | d. tap |
| 5. | a. beating | b. clapping | c. thumping | d. winning |
| 6. | a. pushing | b. clapping | c. poking | d. shoving |



UNIT 4



EXPRESSING...

SUCCESS

- go (off) with a bang
- make it/one's mark/a killing/a go of it/sth
- be on the up and up ➤ go up in the world
- fall/land on one's feet ➤ have (got) it made



What can I say, Pete? The boss says this system will stop people leaving work early while he's out of town.

FAILURE

- fight a losing battle
- come to nothing/grief
- be a lost cause
- go wrong ➤ fall through
- be a flop/disaster/fiasco/shambles
- draw a blank
- go under/bust/to the wall
- fold ➤ go bankrupt

PRESENCE/ABSENCE

- wait in the wings ➤ play truant
- on the spot ➤ behind the scenes
- as large as life ➤ in the flesh
- in the public eye ➤ be out of town
- on leave ➤ put in an appearance
- in sb's presence/absence
- make one's presence known/felt
- when/as soon as sb's back is turned
- do a disappearing act



GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

1. I should keep my on that child if I were you.
People in the public have very little private life.
It was calm in the of the storm, but only for a while!
2. Some of the boys were the fool and your clock got broken, Mum.
Your teacher tells me you've been truant from school again, Billy.
It's no use for time searching for your homework in your bag, because we both know you haven't done it.
3. Ladies and gentlemen, there's no for alarm so please remain in your seats.
Murphy is a lost so I'm not wasting any more of my time trying to help him.
The money we collected went to a good so I didn't mind all the hard work.
4. She certainly up in the world once she started her own business, didn't she?
Everything wrong today so I've come home early.
The party off with a bang when Father Christmas arrived in a police car!
5. You'd know if Harry were here because he likes to make his felt.
Once I was in the of the headmaster, I found I couldn't tell him a lie.
She showed so much of mind in the face of danger, that she was given an award.
6. Jill's face when we told her that Mark wasn't coming to the party.
Old Mr Baker's health into decline when he retired.
We were going on a trip to Ireland but all our plans through at the last minute.



"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. The firm had a lot of success in the soft drinks market. (*killing*)
The firm market.
2. Sergeant Tucker is away until the end of the month. (*leave*)
Sergeant Tucker of the month.
3. The office staff begin gossiping the moment the boss leaves. (*back*)
As the office staff begin gossiping.
4. There are several other people ready to do this job if you can't. (*wings*)
If you can't do this job, there are several can.
5. The press claim he was present when the signing took place. (*spot*)
According when the signing took place.
6. You'll have no success if you think you can make her change her mind. (*losing*)
You you can make her change her mind.
7. He only showed up at the funeral because he knew it would be televised. (*in*)
If it had not been televised at the funeral.
8. They have had a lot of problems, but they're trying to make their marriage successful. (*go*)
Despite their many problems, their marriage.

USE OF ENGLISH



GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

• Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

SET A (based on PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING, GO - SEE EXPRESSIONS, RELATED WORDS)

1. The boss was to death when he read our poem about him.
Katerina was pink when the doctor told her she was expecting twins.
That funny little car has Gail's fancy and she's going to buy one just like it.
2. I think we've the last of him for a while. You really frightened him.
Those old boots of yours have better days, haven't they?
Since Bert has fit to give our steak to the dog, he can go to bed without any dinner.
3. Angela scored two goals and Mary one better and scored three.
Lucy to a lot of trouble to find the exact colour you wanted.
The champagne to Julie's head and she jumped on the table and began to dance.
4. Her face looked very sore where the cat had her.
The old man has a living for years on that tiny farm, yet he's quite happy there.
So far we've only the surface and there's still a great deal of work to be done.
5. You haven't done a(n) of work all day, have you?
The telephone rang on the of midnight.
What a(n) of luck meeting you here!
6. The Titanic didn't change in time to miss the iceberg.
If we win the next match, boys, we'll be on for the Cup Final.
Joanna hated living in the city at first but in the of time she got used to it.

SET B (guided)

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. When I saw the naked foot in the light of the lamp, my ran cold.
There's been bad between them since he married the girl Phil loved.
It really makes my boil to see cruelty to animals. | • heart
• blood
• feelings |
| 2. Whose is it to deal the cards?
You did Emma a good by looking after her baby.
Rescue efforts were hindered at every by appalling weather conditions. | • go
• job
• turn |
| 3. It's time you got your together and did some work.
Adam's done a disappearing and we can't find him anywhere.
Students sometimes get caught in the of trying to cheat in exams. | • trick
• act
• show |
| 4. He's the best student in the class by a(n) way.
The game isn't finished yet, not by a(n) chalk.
Dad's getting a bit in the tooth to be playing football. | • far
• long
• old |
| 5. The with David is he never does his homework.
My grandmother has had with her feet for years.
Some people are just looking for when they go to a football match. | • trouble
• problem
• fault |
| 6. He carried on the business alone but his wasn't really in it.
My was in my mouth the first time I went skydiving.
I said I'd help her but I had a change of when I saw
how much work was involved. | • mind
• heart
• head |



CHECK OUT THAT SUPERMARKET

The way a supermarket is laid out, how goods are positioned, the special displays and offers, are all part of food-retailing science, in which nothing is left to chance. What may seem a random assortment of goods is actually a finely-tuned selling machine. The subtle psychology starts working from the moment you walk in – to what appears to be an indoor street market; islands piled high with colourful fruit, vegetables and cut flowers. Customers are given an impression of brightness and freshness, and with apparent free will can select their own produce. You are indeed free to choose your own carrots, but you usually end up buying more than if they were packaged. As in most supermarkets, aisles are wide here to encourage browsing and spending. Stores make a high profit on fresh produce, which is another reason why you come across it first. Items always sell better from aisle-end displays than from ordinary shelves as the shoppers have to slow down to turn into the next aisle, so there is more time for the products on the end to catch their attention. The next best position is eye-level on the shelves. Supermarkets use these for higher profit margin goods, or for fast-selling items or those lines to which they want to draw their customers' attention. Lower priced goods, such as sugar and flour, tend to get placed on the lower shelves. Goods are always tightly packed. Sunflower oil, for example, sells better when row upon row of bright yellow bottles are crammed along a full shelf, as the colour is eye-catching and attractive.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| 1. laid out | <input type="checkbox"/> | a. finish by |
| 2. left to chance | <input type="checkbox"/> | b. not planned |
| 3. random | <input type="checkbox"/> | c. arranged |
| 4. end up | <input type="checkbox"/> | d. attract somebody |
| 5. aisles | <input type="checkbox"/> | e. haphazard, accidental |
| 6. browsing | <input type="checkbox"/> | f. passageways |
| 7. catch sb's attention | <input type="checkbox"/> | g. amount made in excess of original costs |
| 8. profit margin | <input type="checkbox"/> | h. looking without buying |

Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. Explain in your own words why the writer has chosen to use the expression "apparent free will" (line 6).

.....

2. What image of supermarkets does the writer create?

.....

.....



SPEND, SPEND, SPEND

Some of the supermarket's product lines are essential, and their cost is watched closely by regular customers. Supermarkets raise these prices at their peril. Conversely, people are willing to pay a premium for the convenience of pre-prepared foods. A whole chicken, quartered and in a tray, costs £1.26 a pound, but by buying the whole chicken the cost drops to 89p a pound. When you are in a supermarket, you may think you are moving of your own free will, but your every move is anticipated. Basic essentials are placed well apart and towards the back, so that when you are looking for them, you are 'led' past appealing, more expensive items. Going towards the milk you come to the frozen ready foods section, which are expensive. Another way of "triggering" impulse buys is cross-merchandising – placing expensive seafood cocktail sauce next to the shrimps, or gravy and stuffing mixes above the meat. Of course, a supermarket doesn't want to make finding things too convenient; the longer a shopper stays in a store, the more he or she spends. In many supermarkets, the delicious smells of home-baked bread lures you towards the bakery at the far end. On the way, you pass non-food sections such as toiletries and household goods, where mark-ups are amongst the highest in the store. Wine and spirits are also located at the far end, largely for security reasons. And once you have completed your essential food shopping, you are psychologically more relaxed and ready to add a bottle of wine or some beer to your trolley as a treat. At the check-out counters you will find sweets and glossy magazines to tempt you into that final impulse buy. Some people would claim all this is cheating, but it is giving shoppers what they want at an acceptable price. Perhaps shoppers have to learn to be more discerning.

line 9

VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. at sb's peril | <input type="text"/> | a. foreseen |
| 2. pay a premium | <input type="text"/> | b. at risk of (losing customers) |
| 3. anticipated | <input type="text"/> | c. pay a lot |
| 4. triggering | <input type="text"/> | d. strongly attracts |
| 5. lures | <input type="text"/> | e. activating, starting |
| 6. mark-ups | <input type="text"/> | f. special pleasure |
| 7. treat | <input type="text"/> | g. aware, discriminating |
| 8. discerning | <input type="text"/> | h. amounts added to cost price |

Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. According to the writer, why is the geographical location of many items so important?
.....
2. How would you explain the expression "impulse buys" (line 9)?
.....
3. In a paragraph of between 50 and 70 words, summarise in your own words as far as possible, what techniques a supermarket will employ to make customers buy more.





FATIGUE

One in five people has trouble sleeping, and one in fifteen has chronic insomnia. It's rare to be able to sleep like a log every night and it's only natural to have sleepless nights when you are stressed out or ill. If that's not the reason, avoid stimulants like caffeine within six hours of bedtime, alcohol between one and two hours and cut down on cigarettes. Go to bed only when you are tired; if you are still tossing and turning after twenty minutes or so, get up and read or watch TV until you feel like nodding off.

Six percent of men and fourteen percent of women are run down because of iron-deficiency anaemia; their blood has too little haemoglobin, the molecule that carries oxygen to cells, and this can cause tiredness. Another reason for loss of sleep is apnoea, a snoring sickness. During an episode of obstructive sleep apnoea, the upper airway collapses, cutting off breathing. This is signalled by raucous snoring, followed by gasping and waking. People with apnoea may wake up dozens of times a night, often unknowingly. The fractured sleep leaves them exhausted as they drift in and out of sleep. Clinical depression can also cause fatigue. This condition is thought to be caused by an imbalance in the brain chemicals that influence mood and behaviour. Someone who's depressed often feels worn out in the morning, and the tiredness tends to come and go. Depression-fatigued people typically lack motivation to do things they normally enjoy. Often they can't concentrate, remember things or make decisions.

Doctors aren't sure what causes chronic fatigue syndrome, but people with this ailment aren't just tired; their fatigue is debilitating, keeping them away from work for six weeks or longer. It can be accompanied by muscle pain, sore throat, tender lymph nodes, headaches and impaired memory. Finally, when you get an infection, you produce proteins called cytokines that help white blood cells devour bacteria and other invaders. The problem is they lay you low, too. So, if you've been ill lately or had a fever, go slow with the activities and get plenty of rest.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|--|
| 1. stimulants | <input type="text"/> | a. very tired |
| 2. nodding off | <input type="text"/> | b. in poor health |
| 3. run down | <input type="text"/> | c. illness |
| 4. raucous | <input type="text"/> | d. lack of balance |
| 5. imbalance | <input type="text"/> | e. loud, rough sounding |
| 6. worn out | <input type="text"/> | f. making very weak |
| 7. ailment | <input type="text"/> | g. dozing, falling asleep |
| 8. debilitating | <input type="text"/> | h. something that arouses physiological activity |

Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Clinical depression is probably caused by | 2. Which phrase that the writer uses means an uncomfortable night's sleep? |
| A external influences. | A toss and turn |
| B internal bodily malfunction. | B come and go |
| C iron deficiency. | C raucous snoring |
| D constant exhaustion. | D sleep like a log |



FEELING NERVOUS

At times we find ourselves in situations that make us feel nervous. Perhaps we're afraid of saying foolish things at a party, stumbling over a presentation at work or going blank during a test. For some people the anxiety is so severe that it is personally and professionally incapacitating. But you can increase your social confidence. First of all, don't hide your feelings – be honest. If you feel insecure, admit it. Such frankness is a good way to bring others closer to you. Also learn to deal with anxiety. Break the task that worries you into small steps, and face them one at a time. Once you have started something, you'll find you can cope much better than you thought. Many of us are forced to talk to people in uncomfortable situations. Maybe it's your new boss or your future in-laws. What do you say when your mind goes blank? Make the other person the focus of the conversation. All most people want is for you to pay attention to them. Psychiatrists and psychologists make handsome livings nodding their heads knowingly and asking a few questions. If they can get away with it, so can you.

line 12

Turn your anxiety into energy. Focus on presenting your ideas with force and conviction. You reduce anxiety by believing in yourself, and having the courage to express your feelings. One of our most crippling social fears is that of not measuring up. Perhaps you feel you won't impress others because they are more confident, successful, intelligent or attractive than you. Such thinking is misguided. The secret of doing well with others is accepting yourself. No matter what you are like, some people like you and others couldn't care less. Nobody gets accepted by everyone. But far more people will be attracted to you if you accept yourself.

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

1. stumbling over
2. going blank
3. incapacitating
4. cope
5. focus
6. knowingly
7. crippling
8. misguided

- a. disabling, damaging
- b. confused in thought
- c. manage
- d. centre, main attraction
- e. taking away strength, ability
- f. everything going out of your head
- g. faltering nervously when doing sth
- h. in an understanding manner

B Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The writer's intention when he writes "if they can get away with it" (line 12) is to be
 - A sneering.
 - B bitter.
 - C ironic.
 - D taunting.

2. He says that to be fulfilled you should show
 - A self-assurance.
 - B courage.
 - C boldness.
 - D daring.





UNIT 5

COMPARISONS

I like long walks, as long as they are taken by people who bore me.

Fred Allen

A As... As, NOT As/So... As, THE SAME AS

- This coffee is **as good as** you'll find anywhere.
- The film was **not as/so good as** I thought it would be.
- We're staying at **the same hotel as** last year.
- Barbara's new computer is **the same as** mine.

D HALF/TWICE AS... AS

- Half as many people came **as** last year.
- **Twice as many/Twice/Double the number** of people came last year **as (compared to)** this year.
- There are **half as many boys as** girls.
- There is/are **twice the number of girls to** boys.

B AS MANY/MUCH AS

- Richard has a lot of toys, but **not as many as** Jerry.
- I wish I earned **as much money as** Helen.

E THREE TIMES... THAN

- Prices now are **three times higher than** then.
- Prices then were **a third of what they are now**.
- Prices have risen **three times as much/threefold since** then.

G THAN THAT/THOSE OF...

- Japan's economy is **much stronger than** China's.
- Japan's economy is **much stronger than that of** China.
- I don't enjoy Spielberg's films **as much as** Scorsese's.
- I enjoy Scorsese's films **more than those of** Spielberg.

F MORE/LESS OF... THAN → NOT SO/SUCH... AS

- The new place is **more of a bar than** a café.
- The new place is **less of a café than** a bar.
- The new place is **not so much a café as** a bar.
- My brother skis **much better than** I do.
- I'm **not such a good skier as** my brother.

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

- | | |
|--|---|
| • More people are out of work than ever before. | ⇒ Never before have there been so many people out of work. |
| • You'll never meet a nicer person than Bob. | ⇒ Bob is the nicest person you could ever hope to meet. |
| • It's three degrees warmer today than yesterday. | ⇒ The temperature has gone up (by)/risen (by) three degrees since yesterday. |
| • He's not only intelligent, he's amusing as well . | ⇒ He's as amusing as he is intelligent. |
| • You paid far more than you should have for that. | ⇒ You paid much too much for that. |
| • At least let me pay half. | ⇒ The least I can do is pay half. |
| • There are five times more of them than us. | ⇒ They outnumber us by five to one. |
| • We stayed longer than was worth it. | ⇒ It was not worth staying as long as we did. |
| • Most people know that... | ⇒ It's common knowledge that... |
| • What I love/hate most is... | ⇒ There is nothing I love/hate more than... |
| • He's not enough of a man to own up to the crime. | ⇒ He's too much of a coward to own up to the crime. |
| • Sally is 20 years younger than Jim. | ⇒ Sally is 20 years Jim's junior. |
| • I don't know anyone who works as methodically as he does. | ⇒ He's the most methodical worker I know.
He's a more methodical worker than anyone else I know. |

ORAL PRACTICE

1. Sarah earns double my salary. *My salary...*
2. Henry's not so much a comedian as a storyteller. *Henry's more...*
3. The population has increased fourfold since 1950. *In 1950...*
4. My brother eats less than he used to. *My brother doesn't...*
5. I thought the film would be more interesting than that. *The film...*
6. I paid more than I wanted to. *I did not...*
7. There's no difference between the new and the old edition. *The new...*
8. We can't go any further than this. *This is...*
9. I've put on two kilos since last month. *I'm two kilos...*
10. There are fewer teaching positions than ever before. *Never...*

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS



COMPARISONS

OTHER WAYS OF EXPRESSING COMPARISONS

A GRADUAL/PARALLEL INCREASE/DECREASE

- Technology is becoming **more and more** sophisticated.
- **The longer** we wait to buy it, **the greater** the chance that prices will go up.
- **The more** I see him, **the less** I like him.

B THE MOST/MAXIMUM/THE LEAST/MINIMUM* • At least • No fewer/less than

- | | | |
|---|---|---|
| • You can't buy more than three. | ⇒ | <i>Three is the most/maximum you can buy.</i> |
| • You won't earn less than £150 a week. | ⇒ | <i>£150 a week is the least/minimum you'll earn.</i> |
| • At least 50% of the forest was destroyed. | ⇒ | <i>No less than 50% of the forest was destroyed.</i> |
| • At least twenty people applied for the post. | ⇒ | <i>No fewer than twenty people applied for the post.</i> |

C PREFERENCE

- ♦ *prefer*
- ♦ *would rather/sooner*
- ♦ *would as soon... (as)*

- I **prefer** (drinking) coffee to (drinking) tea.
- I'd **prefer** to pay someone to do it, **rather than** fix it myself.
- James **would rather/sooner** work the night shift **than** the day shift.
- I'd **rather/sooner** you came tomorrow evening **than** tomorrow morning.
- Susan **would (just) as soon** stay in **as** go out.
- I'd **as soon** you didn't use the phone so much.

D COMPARISON/CONTRAST

- Inflation is now 4 per cent, **compared to/in comparison with/as against/in contrast to** 6 per cent last year.
- The money you earn is **in proportion to/relative to** the amount of work you do.
- Martin never seems to do any work. His sister, **by contrast**, is very industrious.
- The professor explained the origins of language **by analogy with** a tree and its roots.
- I had a headache **such as** I had never had before.

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| • He compared/likened the Miss World beauty contest to a cattle market. | ⇒ | <i>He drew an analogy/a parallel between the Miss World beauty contest and a cattle market.</i> |
| • The old machine was (by) far more efficient than the new one. | ⇒ | <i>The new machine is nothing like/not nearly as efficient as the old one.</i> |
| • You can't compare the two. | ⇒ | <i>There's no comparison between the two.</i> |
| • There is no similarity between the twins. | ⇒ | <i>The twins are (totally) unlike.</i> |
| • This is without equal . | ⇒ | <i>This is beyond compare.</i> |
| • UFOs do not exist . | ⇒ | <i>There is no such thing as a UFO.</i> |
| • Your book's not the same as mine. | ⇒ | <i>Your book is different from/to mine.</i> |
| • It was much hotter yesterday than today. | ⇒ | <i>Today is nowhere near as hot as yesterday.</i> |
| • That's the best film I've ever seen. | ⇒ | <i>I've yet to see a better film than that.</i> |
| • Twice as many people lived here in 1980. | ⇒ | <i>Today the population here is half that of (what it was in) 1980./has halved since 1980.</i> |

ORAL PRACTICE

1. You can't have more than three days off. *Three days...*
2. I'd prefer you didn't use my room to study in. *I'd as...*
3. You can't compare Van Gogh's style to Dali's. *There's...*
4. At least 1,500 people drowned when the *Titanic* sank. *No...*
5. He always likens city life to an ant colony. *He always draws...*
6. Each time I play the game I get better. *The...*
7. My sister knows at least three people who can speak Spanish. *My sister knows no...*
8. There are fewer cases of the disease in this country compared to last year. *In...*
9. Spending more time on it will increase your understanding of the subject. *The longer...*
10. The least he'll sell his house for is £60,000. *He won't...*



A "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. The tax you pay depends on the size of your property. (*proportion*)
The tax you pay property.
2. Women outnumber men by two to one on the computer course. (*twice*)
There on the computer course.
3. Mr Henderson said the class was like a troop of monkeys at a tea party. (*analogy*)
Mr Henderson a troop of monkeys at a tea party.
4. You can't compare fresh asparagus to the tinned variety. (*between*)
There tinned asparagus.
5. I had underestimated the changes I would find in my home town. (*than*)
There find in my home town.
6. His early work is totally different to what he produced later in life. (*like*)
His early work later in life.
7. The minimum wage is now \$120 a week, compared to \$100 last year. (*in*)
The minimum wage is now \$120 \$100 last year.
8. A year ago these goods cost half as much as they do now. (*price*)
These goods last year.
9. Patrick is much more conscientious a worker than David. (*near*)
David Patrick.
10. Most people know that Britain's economy is heavily dependent on North Sea oil. (*common*)
It dependent on North Sea oil.

B DERIVATIVES

WAR - TORN COUNTRY

I'd like to thank you all for your (0)..... *hospitality* at these peace talks.
I can't emphasise enough the (1)..... of the two sides meeting
and stating (2)..... what their hopes and aspirations are.
We certainly do not want to be (3)..... on the running of your
country, but we cannot allow this conflict to spread and (4).....
We (5)..... with all that your people have gone through
and respect your traditions. In all (6)....., we have no interest
in (7)..... your country, but simply wish to be of help.
We have to look at the (8)..... of allowing foreign troops on
your territory, and the (9)..... of talking to the rebels.
At this point we cannot afford (10)..... . We must succeed.

HOSPITABLE
IMPORTANT
TRUE
INTRUDE
LONG
SYMPATHY
HONEST
WEST
WISE
USE
FAIL



A GUIDED CLOZE TEST: FILL IN

LEGGED LOCOMOTION

The invention of the wheel has long been hailed as a milestone in human progress. But wheels usually perform best on relatively (0)..... *smooth* surfaces such as roads or railway lines. They are (1)..... less effective on ground which is soft or uneven. Tracked vehicles can manage uneven terrain, but (2)..... mountainous or swampy territory. (3)..... these situations the advantages (4)..... legged locomotion become apparent. Animals and humans can (5)..... out the individual footholds that provide the best support; a wheel or track (6)..... a continuous path of support. Generally, legs also have an advantage (7)..... wheels in and around buildings, (8)..... they can climb stairs, step over obstacles and negotiate narrow spaces. One potential application (9)..... a legged machine, for example, might be to rescue people from burning buildings. Another could be to perform inspections in a nuclear plant (10)..... the reactor remained in (11)..... .

Despite the abundance of (12)..... to be found in nature, scientists working on legged locomotion (13)..... a considerable challenge. Since the 1980s it has been possible to (14)..... computers inside legged vehicles, but the problems of balance, co-ordination and negotiating rough terrain, while not insurmountable, have (15)..... difficult to solve.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| 0. smooth / calm / soft / bare | 6. requests / requires / insists / commands | 11. work / performance / running / operation |
| 1. such / lot / even / much | 7. on / in / over / of | 12. machines / types / bases / models |
| 2. even / yet / not / either | 8. although / nevertheless / since / even | 13. look / face / stand / support |
| 3. For / On / In / Of | 9. to / on / in / of | 14. instil / install / invest / induce |
| 4. for / over / of / from | 10. while / although / despite / since | 15. shown / tested / proved / verified |
| 5. take / choose / look / pick | | |

B Fill each of the numbered blanks in the passage with one suitable word.

CRIME AND PUNISHMENT

It is difficult to determine why crimes are committed, and (0)..... *equally/just* as difficult to suggest an effective punishment. (1)..... history, societies have differed (2)..... their attitude towards punishment, but (3)..... have always been substantial numbers of people who support harsh penalties, sometimes taking the view that the punishment should (4)..... the crime. Even today, a national referendum would probably (5)..... that a majority was in favour of both corporal and capital (6)..... . On the other hand, (7)..... would say that severe punishment hardens criminals, (8)..... then return to society with even (9)..... chance of leading a lawful life than before. These people advocate an extension (10)..... the methods of probation and reformation which have been applied with some success in the (11)..... of juvenile delinquents. Those who advocate (12)..... methods are horrified that some criminals show (13)..... distaste for prison life, and so argue that their sentences should be (14)..... much more unpleasant to encourage them to try harder to (15)..... a useful life outside. It is claimed, however, that the evident inefficiency of the early 19th-century penal system refutes this argument: crime continued unabated, even though there were over 200 offences punishable by death.



UNIT 5

PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING

MOSCOW MEETING



Well, they always said that as a salesman there was something out of the ordinary about you, Sam.

It was snowing heavily in Moscow. The man seemed engrossed in his newspaper but there was something out of the ordinary about him. Helmut was suspicious of everyone at the moment. In collaboration with the CIA a plan was devised to get him out of Berlin, and with the exception of "M", no one knew he was in Moscow. For the foreseeable future he had to lie low, out of sight. The Americans were on the verge of making an important deal with the Russians and frantic negotiations were going on behind the scenes. They had to succeed. Could this man be the agent who had killed Rolf in cold blood? It was said he was in possession of information which could wreck the delicate negotiations. He must be stopped. In anticipation of danger, Helmut moved slowly towards the man, with the intention of challenging him. He peered at the man again. He still hadn't moved. Then, to his horror, he recognised him as the British agent and in the back of his head was a gaping bullet wound. He had long been dead. The real killer was still at large.

A FILL IN with the appropriate prepositions.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|--------------------|
| • the grounds that | ⇒ the reason that | • frown | ⇒ disapprove |
| • concentrate | ⇒ apply oneself | • hold | ⇒ abeyance |
| • its peak | ⇒ its heyday | • lead | ⇒ result |
| • bear a resemblance | ⇒ look | • lend | ⇒ loan |



When I said concentrate on Anderson, I meant the company.

REPHRASING

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| • It makes no/little difference to me | ⇒ be unexpected | ⇒ take by surprise |
| ⇒ It's all the same to me | ⇒ be a bolt from the blue | |
| ⇒ I don't care whether/if... | • improve | ⇒ show (signs of)/make an improvement |
| • as good as | ⇒ be/get better | ⇒ be an improvement on |
| ⇒ (much) the same (as)... | • unlike | ⇒ different from |
| ⇒ on a par with | ⇒ bear no/little resemblance to | |
| ⇒ evenly matched | ⇒ have nothing/much/little in common (with) | |
| ⇒ nothing/little to choose between | | |

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- The two models are much the same. (choose)
There two models.
- His sloppy work led to his being fired. (resulted)
His sloppy work fired.
- Samantha is totally different from her twin sister. (resemblance)
Samantha twin sister.
- The case was dismissed for the reason that there was insufficient evidence. (on)
They threw the case out insufficient evidence.
- In my opinion, her latest CD is as good as her last one. (par)
In my opinion, her her last one.
- Punk fashion was at its peak in the late seventies. (heyday)
Punk fashion late seventies.
- Few people approved of his presence at the funeral. (frowned)
Most at the funeral.
- The doctor says Harry's health is improving. (showing)
According to improvement.
- It's all the same to me whether I'm invited or not. (difference)
It I'm invited or not.
- David should concentrate more on his studies. (apply)
David his studies.



- ◇ **catch a glimpse of:** notice briefly • *I just caught a glimpse of someone in the garden - I think it was Jules.*
- ◇ **catch sb's attention/eye:** make sb aware of one's presence
• *I managed to catch her eye finally and she came over to talk to me.*
- ◇ **catch one's breath:** rest/relax after strenuous activity
• *After all that activity I need to catch my breath for two minutes.*
- ◇ **catch sb on the hop/off (their) guard/on the wrong foot/napping/unawares:** surprise sb
• *It was embarrassing when he arrived with his boss. They really caught me off (my) guard.*
- ◇ **catch sb in the act (of):** find sb doing sth wrong
• *He can't deny taking the money - he was caught in the act.*
- ◇ **catch hold of:** close one's hand tightly on
• *I just caught hold of her hand and ran through the blazing doorway.*
- ◇ **catch oneself doing sth:** suddenly become aware that one is doing sth
• *I caught myself tapping on the desk, which I know drives Colin mad.*
- ◇ **catch fire:** start burning • *Nobody's quite sure how the building caught fire.*



To cut a long story short, I'll be somewhat delayed for the annual general meeting.

- ◇ **cut corners:** do sth quickly but not thoroughly
• *I can tell you cut corners with this work - it's just not up to your usual standard.*
- ◇ **cut it fine:** achieve sth just in time, with very little time to spare
• *We really cut it fine and arrived one minute before our train was due to leave.*
- ◇ **cut sb/sth short:** interrupt sb/sth • *We ran out of money and had to cut our holiday short.*
- ◇ **cut sb off without a penny:** disinherit sb from one's will
• *After her affair with Pierre, Susan's father cut her off without a penny.*
- ◇ **cut sb dead:** ignore sb's presence • *When I started talking about Miranda, Steven cut me dead and left.*
- ◇ **cut one's nose off to spite one's face:** do sth to hurt sb else but at the same time hurting oneself
• *Leaving the party because she wanted to annoy her boyfriend was only cutting off her nose to spite her face.*
- ◇ **cut no ice with sb:** not be impressed by • *His claim to know the president cuts no ice with me.*
- ◇ **have one's work cut out:** face a difficult task
• *You'll have your work cut out trying to control Lily. She's a real handful.*
- ◇ **cut a long story short:** give a short account of • *To cut a long story short, we were rescued after two days.*

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. I was attracted by a miniature china ornament in a shop window yesterday. (eye)
A miniature china ornament yesterday.
2. They were totally unprepared for my arrival. (unawares)
They by my arrival.
3. Resigning to annoy your boss is really only hurting yourself and you know it. (cutting)
Resigning to annoy your boss is like and you know it.
4. I just noticed a fox dive into the bushes in the back garden. (glimpse)
I the bushes in the back garden.
5. His father left him no money in his will. (off)
His father when he died.
6. The teacher found him cheating and sent him to the headmaster. (act)
The teacher and sent him to the headmaster.
7. Her remark took me completely by surprise. (caught)
Her guard.
8. I'm sorry to interrupt you, but I have to leave. (short)
I'm sorry to leave.
9. The fact that he is a TV personality does not impress me. (ice)
The fact that he is me.
10. You are leaving very late if you want to be at the airport on time. (cutting)
You're at the airport on time.



UNIT

5

ADVERBS - COLLOCATIONS

A BLACK SPOT



I know you'll stick by me, dear. As I said on the telephone, I **badly misjudged** our finances - we've no money left.

The accident happened in a **sparsely populated** part of town. The driver had **badly misjudged** the sharpness of the curve and was **fatally injured** in the subsequent crash. The car was **fully laden** with inflammable fluids which set off a major fire. This was not the first time an accident had occurred here, and there had previously been many close calls. At first the local council **flatly denied** that it was an accident black spot, even though one of them had **narrowly escaped** losing his own life there just weeks before. Many of the residents **strongly supported** the straightening of the road. **Roughly speaking**, three-quarters of the town would be more than happy to pay for any improvement in the road, although it would **interest** them **almost equally** to construct a bypass. A **highly-paid** civil engineer was invited to the town council meeting to give his opinion. One speaker pointed out that we owe a safe road system to subsequent generations, and finally, after much debate, all the council members **concurred completely**.

A Match the words in bold type with the sets of adjectives/verbs.

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. strongly | <input type="text"/> | a. mistaken, want, hurt |
| 2. badly | <input type="text"/> | b. value, amused, seasoned |
| 3. highly | <input type="text"/> | c. crave, protest, believe, support |

ADVERB COLLOCATIONS

- eat/laugh **heartily**
- **loosely** connected, based
- settle, co-exist **peacefully**
- **stubbornly** refuse, insist
- **barely** perceptible, recognisable
- **thoroughly** disgusted, ashamed

B ADJECTIVE & NOUN COLLOCATIONS

- | | | | | | |
|---------------|----------------------|-------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| I. 1. squeaky | <input type="text"/> | a. comforts | II. 1. mitigating | <input type="text"/> | a. tired |
| 2. free | <input type="text"/> | b. origins | 2. fair | <input type="text"/> | b. circumstances |
| 3. creature | <input type="text"/> | c. clean | 3. carbon | <input type="text"/> | c. pill |
| 4. humble | <input type="text"/> | d. span | 4. dog | <input type="text"/> | d. copy |
| 5. attention | <input type="text"/> | e. speech | 5. bitter | <input type="text"/> | e. game |

C M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

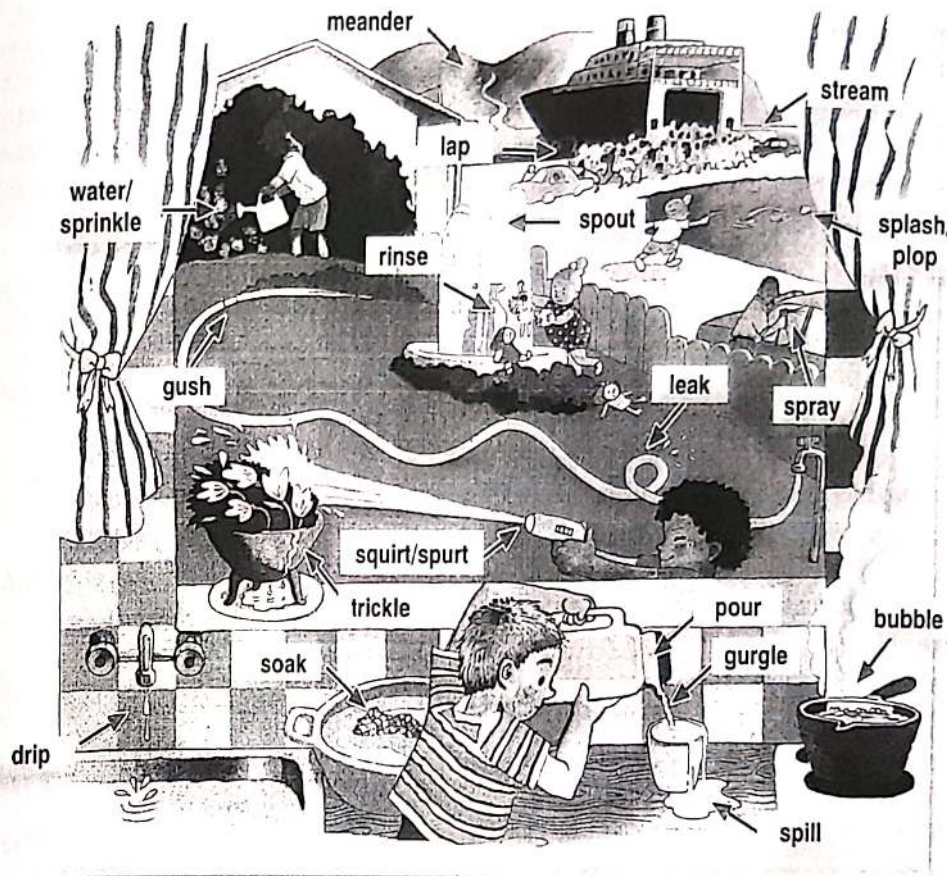
Don Daly's (1)..... clean reputation in the political field has suffered. The man once fancied as a future president has (2)..... refused to admit any connection with the Mafia, and has (3)..... protested his innocence, despite a newspaper article which accused him of taking bribes. He has a number of luxurious homes, and his love of (4)..... comforts is well known. He is a man of (5)..... origins, who rose quickly to political fame, and it will be a (6)..... pill for him to swallow if he has to resign.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. a. barely | b. thoroughly | c. flatly | d. squeaky |
| 2. a. fully | b. stubbornly | c. sparsely | d. heartily |
| 3. a. loosely | b. narrowly | c. strongly | d. badly |
| 4. a. creature | b. humble | c. fair | d. mitigating |
| 5. a. free | b. bitter | c. humble | d. fair |
| 6. a. bitter | b. humble | c. carbon | d. squeaky |

RELATED WORDS

LIQUIDS

- spout off • pour with rain • a security leak • a gushing speech
- water down • soaking wet • in deep/hot water • pour cold water on
- hold water • spill the beans • a splash of colour • water under the bridge



M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

Ben turned from the window. It was (1)..... with rain, and in the distance he could hear the roll of thunder.

"If Margaret's coming now, she'll get (2)..... wet," he said. "I should have gone to meet her in the car. Anyway, it's going to be a difficult meeting. I'll have to (3)..... cold water on her latest proposals - they're simply not feasible. I don't want to (4)..... off - I sometimes think I talk too much anyway, but if we do what she wants we'll be in (5)..... water. The Prime Minister is upset enough about the security (6)..... without making things worse. But I tell you one thing - she isn't going to be very happy about all this."

- | | | | | |
|----|--------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. | a. splashing | b. pouring | c. gushing | d. trickling |
| 2. | a. soaking | b. spraying | c. pouring | d. gurgling |
| 3. | a. spill | b. leak | c. squirt | d. pour |
| 4. | a. gush | b. bubble | c. spout | d. lap |
| 5. | a. pouring | b. hot | c. leaking | d. soaking |
| 6. | a. leak | b. spout | c. rinse | d. splash |



UNIT 5

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

EXPRESSING...

KNOWLEDGE

- keep track of
- keep abreast of
- get the message
- read sb like a book
- be well versed in
- at one's fingertips
- be a household name
- know (all) the ins and outs of
- know (sth) inside out
- have a working knowledge of
- know (it) like the back of one's hand

IGNORANCE

- it beats me
- out of touch
- cut sb dead
- not be in/up on
- little did I know
- plead ignorance
- keep sth secret
- fall on deaf ears
- anybody's guess
- search me
- lose track of
- be in the dark
- unbeknown(st) to
- not make head or tail of
- not have a clue about
- turn a blind eye/deaf ear
- bury your head in the sand
- not know the first thing about
- your guess is as good as
- not pay any/pay no attention

A GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

1. Henry has made a(n) for himself in the government and may be a minister soon.
Eric got such a bad for running up debts, the bank won't lend him any more money.
Georgie Best was a household in the late sixties but only football fans remember him now.
2. One of these days I'll him back for getting me fired.
All our hard work will off one day soon, I'm sure of it.
You should no attention to Dorothy - she doesn't know what she's talking about.
3. When I got to the of the queue, the cashier said she was closing for lunch.
It's all very well to bury your in the sand, but you'll have to face facts sooner or later.
He says he's got no for heights so he won't go up and fix the TV aerial.
4. I think that the baby will a tooth any day now.
Well, to a long story short, I left the car in the river and walked home.
The next time I see that horrible man, I intend to him dead.
5. Jerry doesn't the first thing about computers so don't let him touch mine.
Dad lived here as a child so he must the town like the back of his hand.
You need to all the ins and outs of the stock exchange before investing a lot of money.
6. I spend my holidays somewhere off the beaten because I hate crowds of tourists.
We were enjoying ourselves so much that we completely lost of time.
We'll have to send thank-you notes for all donations, so for heaven's sake keep of who sent what!

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. However much I try to figure it out, I've still no idea how he did it. (me)
However much I try to he did it.
2. She couldn't understand anything about the message. (make)
She couldn't the message.
3. No one at the conference heeded his pleas for a peaceful solution. (on)
His pleas at the conference.
4. He doesn't know what's happening in the theatre world any more. (out)
He is the theatre world these days.
5. As regards her whereabouts, you know as much as I do. (as)
As far as her whereabouts mine.
6. I knew nothing about the president's plans. (was)
I president's plans.
7. If anyone asks you, just tell them you didn't know. (plead)
Just asks you.
8. Although I shouldn't, I choose to ignore some of the things my son gets up to. (turn)
I know I shouldn't, some of the things my son gets up to.

USE OF ENGLISH



GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

• Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

SET A (based on PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING, CATCH - CUT EXPRESSIONS, ADVERBS - COLLOCATIONS, EXPRESSING..., RELATED WORDS)

1. I got a of red wine on my dress and it won't wash off.
We heard a gentle and saw a deer swimming across the lake.
The room is white but the blue cushions add a nice of colour.
2. Fortunately, no one was very injured in the car crash.
You're mistaken if you think I'll lend you any more money.
I want those soft leather boots so but I'll never be able to afford them.
3. I quickly get on with my work when I myself thinking about cakes and sweets.
We may a glimpse of Julia Roberts if we go round to the stage door.
You won't find out what Brian's up to unless you can him off his guard.
4. By working till midnight and a few corners, we managed to finish by the deadline.
I'll never forgive him for me dead in front of all those people.
Getting to the airport with five minutes to spare is what I call it fine.
5. I went round the world when I was young but that's under the bridge now.
Your argument doesn't hold because none of your statistics makes sense.
Those two are in hot for cheating in the exams.
6. I'm sorry I jumped but you me by surprise.
Patty offence at the remark and started to cry.
She a leaf out of her brother's book and decided to study engineering.

SET B (guided)

1. Her career has always taken second to her social life.
Dad's heart is in the right although he can be strict when he likes.
Anna's hair was all over the by the time she got home.
2. Michael's exam results are a to the school.
I know he's not good at English but I give him for trying.
We have no money but we can get if we ask nicely.
3. The police had to their way into the building.
Peggy lost her car keys and had to her car open.
Good distance runners usually the pace to tire out the opposition.
4. We should be able to up for lost time if we work over the weekend.
Let's the most of the time we have left in Budapest.
I've no idea how I'm going to ends meet this month.
5. Singing these old songs puts me in of my days at school.
It sounds as if he hasn't got a of his own if he always copies you.
You have to bear in that conditions today are very different from fifty years ago.
6. I left home when I of age and found a little flat.
Some of the ship's lifeboats loose and smashed against the side.
My horse was leading all the way round the course but it to grief at the last fence.

- way
- place
- part
- credit
- praise
- prize
- force
- push
- break
- turn
- make
- pass
- memory
- thought
- mind

- was
- went
- came



IS THIS JUSTICE?

For years John Hayley had been brought to court for offences ranging from arson and armed robbery to burglary, but each time he'd been given sentences such as conditional discharge, supervision and probation. On December 9th, he and a friend slashed a few tyres in South London. When Robert Osborne, a 40-year-old teacher and father of two, confronted him, Hayley stabbed him fatally in the chest. Hayley pleaded self-defence, and got off the murder and manslaughter charges. Patrick Tissier was only 19 when he raped and killed his girlfriend in 1971, and he was sentenced to 20 years in prison. After 10 years, this "model prisoner" was let out on leave, and immediately attacked one woman and raped another. He was given 15 years, but was released after 10 once again. He then murdered an 8-year-old, and threw her body down a well.

line 14 - These cases are among the thousands of examples in Europe of criminal-justice practices that have become dangerously lax. Only 37% of crimes in France are ever cleared up. One reason is that their sheer numbers overwhelm police forces. More worrying is the fact that if the crime is considered too small or the case isn't airtight, demoralised police and prosecuting lawyers prefer to save the cost of prosecution. In Germany, 34% of cases are dismissed without trial as a result. In the Netherlands, only 10% of criminal cases ever go to court. Trivial flaws in evidence in many European countries can also allow a case to be thrown out. In Germany, some 65% of lawbreakers will be re-arrested within 5 years, and in France, the Ministry of Justice's research unit found that among young offenders, 76% of them were re-arrested and convicted within 5 years. Across Europe, many are never jailed at all because they are too young. Being a minor is keeping one English 14-year-old out of prison, even though he committed more than 220 thefts in one year.

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|--|
| 1. discharge | <input type="checkbox"/> | a. young person not considered legally responsible |
| 2. probation | <input type="checkbox"/> | b. not serious or strict, negligent |
| 3. manslaughter | <input type="checkbox"/> | c. imperfection; mistake |
| 4. lax | <input type="checkbox"/> | d. feeling of losing confidence/enthusiasm |
| 5. airtight | <input type="checkbox"/> | e. release from prison/hospital/the army |
| 6. demoralised | <input type="checkbox"/> | f. sure; solid |
| 7. flaw | <input type="checkbox"/> | g. crime of unintentionally killing sb |
| 8. minor | <input type="checkbox"/> | h. period when a criminal is supervised by the authorities, not sent to prison |

B Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. What does the writer mean by "the case isn't airtight" (line 14)?
.....
2. From the examples given by the writer, what do you understand to be the point he is making?
.....



FAULTS IN THE SYSTEM

Many magistrates and police officers feel that routine early release undermines the credibility of sentencing. Small wonder that Europe's police lack motivation, when after having spent a great deal of time on catching a crook, he is out free on the streets the following day. One reason criminals don't stay long behind bars is a chronic jail shortage, and the great cost of incarcerating someone can make releasing him an attractive alternative. Police are also staggering under a load of paperwork that often discourages them from pressing charges. British officers, for example, have to fill up to 50 forms for a single arrest. In one child murder case, six policemen have spent 18 months collecting and printing out 20 tons of material requested by defence lawyers. There are certain steps which should be taken.

The administrative burden on police officers must be reduced so they can get back on the streets. Tape and video recordings of meetings should be admitted as evidence. Bail should be restricted, and not be available for offenders previously convicted of violent crimes. Criminal justice must deal more severely with persistent juvenile offenders. This should include secure accommodation, like halfway houses, away from the hardened prison population.

There must also be more certainty of punishment for crime. This means building more jails and ensuring that sentences are actually spent behind bars. Mandatory terms for certain serious offences should be instituted. Justice systems remain fragmented within the European Community, despite increasing cross-border crime. Finally, all of us must work for more effective criminal justice. Judges can't fight crime alone. Society must also do its part.

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|---|
| 1. undermine | <input type="checkbox"/> | a. money paid to a court for the release of sb before their trial |
| 2. motivation | <input type="checkbox"/> | b. begin; put into effect |
| 3. incarcerate | <input type="checkbox"/> | c. obligatory |
| 4. press charges | <input type="checkbox"/> | d. good reason for doing sth |
| 5. bail | <input type="checkbox"/> | e. make less strong/secure |
| 6. halfway house | <input type="checkbox"/> | f. formally accuse sb of a crime |
| 7. mandatory | <input type="checkbox"/> | g. put into prison |
| 8. institute | <input type="checkbox"/> | h. temporary home for ex-prisoners while they get used to normal life |

B Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. Explain what the writer means by "undermining the credibility of sentencing" (line 1)
.....
2. How does the writer think juvenile offenders should be treated differently?
.....
3. In a paragraph of between 50 and 70 words, summarise in your own words as far as possible, why so many cases are never brought to court.



UNIT 5

READING

MOUNTAIN BIKING

You don't have to visit far-flung places like Kashmir to enjoy the thrill of mountain biking. But to ride off the road anywhere you'll have to master a few basics. On a 24-gear mountain bike, cycling uphill is almost fun. The bikes are geared lower than road bikes, so there are more 'easy' gears to choose from. To make climbing even easier, keep your body low, elbows in, and weight forward. Try to stay seated and let your legs do the work. On a bumpy descent, let the bike take the jolts by not keeping too firm a grip on the handlebars and aiming your elbows away from your body. Rise a few inches above your seat so that you are standing on the pedals, knees slightly bent. Keep the pedals on a horizontal plane. To control your speed, use both your front and your rear brakes. Single-track riding provides varied terrain and obstacles such as roots, rocks and ruts. Some of these are meant to be ridden over, but some, like pointed rocks, should be avoided. To do so, look beyond the obstacle, because where your eyes go, your wheels tend to follow. Many bikers make the mistake of staring at the object in their path instead of at the route around it.

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

1. far-flung

2. master

3. bumpy

4. jolts

5. handlebars

6. terrain

7. obstacle

8. rut



a. learn completely

b. object in your way

c. mark/track in the ground made by vehicle

d. a long distance away

e. not even

f. metal bars for steering a bicycle

g. sudden rough movements

h. area of land

B Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. When coming down a hill, you should

A keep your body in a compact position.

B stay seated if possible.

C take your weight on your legs.

D keep your elbows close to your body.

2. If you see a dangerous object, you should

A ride carefully over it.

B dismount and go round it.

C watch it carefully.

D concentrate on the path past it.

READING



BRITISH HEART FOUNDATION BIKE RIDE

One of the world's biggest bike rides is organised by the British Heart Foundation. Since the first one in 1976, in which a mere 34 people took part, the event has grown so popular that enthusiasts fly in from the USA, Canada, South Africa and other distant lands. Last year 30,000 competitors took part, all of them enthusiastic part-timers. A sizeable minority of them had had some sort of health problem, and had turned to cycling as a means of recovery. Speed is not of the essence, and participants are reminded that this is not a race. Safety is the major factor, although this does not stop the party-like atmosphere. There are musicians, acrobats, stilt walkers and there is a prize for the most unusual costumes. Tandems, penny-farthings, shopping bikes - the range of bicycles is huge. And despite limitations on size and shape, some strange vehicles always appear. A few years ago two riders appeared in pilots' uniforms, riding a tandem decorated like an aircraft, with loud military music blaring out. Although the primary concern of the event is to encourage people to be sound in mind and body and reduce stress, these enthusiasts of every age and background, with the backing of thousands of sponsors, raised nearly £1,000,000 last year. The money will fund rehabilitation programmes and heart research, including a long-term study of 10,000 people on how stress combines with other risk factors such as smoking and obesity to cause heart disease.

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

1. of the essence
2. tandem
3. blaring out
4. primary concern
5. sound
6. sponsor
7. rehabilitation
8. obesity



- a. main purpose
- b. healthy
- c. help to return to normal
- d. fatness
- e. bike for two riders
- f. making loud noise
- g. very important
- h. person/company who pays for something

B Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

1. The writer suggests that the main idea behind the bike ride is to

- A make people more health conscious.
- B raise money for charity.
- C help with medical research.
- D encourage people to relax and have fun.

2. All competitors

- A had suffered some sort of medical problem.
- B are amateur cyclists.
- C are mainly middle-aged.
- D are part of a long-term study on health.



UNIT 6

INFINITIVE - GERUND

INFINITIVE

The reason I often quote myself is to add spice to my conversation.
George Bernard Shaw

A FULL INFINITIVE

- ♦ as subject/object
- ♦ expressing purpose
- ♦ result clauses
- ♦ after certain nouns/adjectives
- ♦ after question words
- ♦ replacing relative clauses
- ♦ introductory phrases

- ♦ To find a cheap flat in this area is not easy.
- ♦ He refused to answer me.
- ♦ He lit a fire (so as) to/in order to keep warm.
- ♦ Tim was too tired to stay up and watch the film.
- ♦ I admire his ability to speak Greek.
- ♦ It's not fair to criticise him.
- ♦ I don't know how to swim.
- ♦ I'm always the last (one) to know.
- ♦ To begin with... ♦ To tell the truth... ♦ To be frank...

B BARE INFINITIVE AFTER:

MODALS ♦ David should know. ♦ We must go.

HAD BETTER, WOULD RATHER/SOONER

♦ "We'd better tell her."

"OK, but I'd rather not say anything just yet."

WHY (NOT) - FOR QUESTIONS/SUGGESTIONS/ADVICE

- ♦ Why stay in a hotel when you can stay with us?
- ♦ Why not start our own business?

CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS

- ♦ We can do nothing now but/except pray.
- ♦ Do you want to stay or leave?

CERTAIN VERBS IN ACTIVE VOICE

- ♦ She won't let me speak to him.
- ♦ They watched him cross the road.

C PERFECT (PASSIVE) INFINITIVE

- ♦ Mexico is the only country ever to have won the cup.
- ♦ I'd like to have been asked.

D FULL INFINITIVE ♦ BARE INFINITIVE

- ♦ I got Tina to send a fax. ⇒ I had Tina send a fax.
- ♦ They forced her to leave. ⇒ They made her leave.
- ♦ You don't have to call him. ⇒ You needn't call him.
- ♦ You are to be on time. ⇒ You must be on time.

E (PERFECT) PROGRESSIVE INFINITIVE

- ♦ He seemed to be having problems.
- ♦ He was said to have been working for the C.I.A.

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

- ♦ Too much hard work caused him to collapse. ⇒ His collapse resulted from too much hard work.
- ♦ Her story is impossible to believe. ⇒ Her story is incredible/unbelievable.
- ♦ For him to be punctual is very rare. ⇒ He hardly ever comes on time.
- ♦ He's bound to win. ⇒ It's a foregone conclusion that he'll win.
- ♦ We have no choice/option but to sit tight. ⇒ We can't do anything but sit tight.
- ♦ I'm sorry to have made you wait. ⇒ I'm sorry that I made you wait.
- ♦ I didn't know what to say. ⇒ I was at a loss for words.
- ♦ I knew it was a stupid question so I didn't ask. ⇒ I knew better than to ask (a stupid question).
- ♦ It would have been rude not to accept. ⇒ Not to accept/to have accepted would have been rude.
- ♦ I got there and was told he'd left. ⇒ I got there only to be told he'd left.
- ♦ He never sang in public again after he retired. ⇒ He retired, never to sing in public again.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. For Keith to buy a round of drinks is very unusual. *Keith...*
2. Reliable staff are hard to find these days. *It's not...*
3. He was at a loss for words when he saw his surprise birthday cake. *He did not...*
4. I had the whole house rewired by an electrician. *I got...*
5. Don't buy it if you can get it for free. *Why...*
6. You're under no obligation to pay immediately. *You need...*
7. I wish I had been there. *I'd love...*
8. Don't touch my papers. *You are...*
9. Our only option is to wait and see what happens. *We can't...*
10. The reason I'm calling is that I wanted to let you know about the changes in the schedule. *I'm...*

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

INITIATIVE



- » Accepting the job will mean moving house.
- » The worst thing about the job is working inside all the time.
- » How can you put up with his complaining all the time?
- » We'll find out by asking Edward.
- » They accused him of cheating.
- » There's no fishing in this lake.

A PERFECT GERUND

- » He denied having witnessed the accident.
- » Nigel apologised for not having called earlier.

E PASSIVE (PERFECT) GERUND

- » I dislike being told I'm overweight.
- » She went to the party without having been invited.

C VERBS FOLLOWED BY GERUND

appreciate, avoid, delay, dread,
consider, involve, mention, miss,
resent, resist, risk, suggest...

- » The job involves travelling abroad.
- » He regretted (=expressed his regret for) not taking the job.
- » Alan left the room to avoid being asked to help.

D EXPRESSIONS

can't help/stand, have trouble/difficulty (in), for fear of,
be/get used to, it's (not) worth, tired of, fed up with,
in the hope of, with a view to, make allowances for,
have any/no objection to, be responsible for...

- » She can't help crying at weddings.
- » Did you have any difficulty in getting here?
- » She never wears her best watch for fear of losing it.

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

INFINITIVE → GERUND

- » It's impossible to say/tell. ⇒ There's no saying/telling.
- » He is unable to do it. ⇒ He's not capable of doing it.
- » They refused to stay. ⇒ They insisted on leaving.
- » We have to wash the car. ⇒ The car needs washing.
- » He's not likely to agree.
- ⇒ There's no/little likelihood of his/him agreeing.
- » It was impossible to get there because of the strike.
- ⇒ The strike prevented us from getting there.
- » I was just about to call you.
- ⇒ I was just on the point of calling you.
- » It didn't occur/never occurred to me to ask.
- ⇒ I didn't think of asking.
- » I intend to speak...
- ⇒ I have every intention of speaking...
- ⇒ I am intent on speaking...

EXPRESSIONS

- » Is it all right if I (borrow)...
- ⇒ Do you mind my/me (borrowing)...
- » I think it's a good idea to (go)...
- ⇒ I'd recommend (going)...
- » What a surprise to see you here!
- ⇒ Fancy seeing you here!
- » There is no way we can do it.
- ⇒ There is no way of doing it.
- » It's pointless/useless to try.
- ⇒ There's no point (in)/It's no good/use trying.
- » Why not (take)...
- ⇒ What's wrong with/How about (taking)...
- » Is it likely to rain?
- ⇒ Is there any chance of it/its raining?
- » I'm not sorry I did it/to have done it.
- ⇒ I have no regrets about doing/having done it.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. I went to the antique fair because I wanted to find another Queen Anne table. *With a...*
2. It's useless to ask Eric for help. *There's...*
3. Aunt Iris always brings presents for the children when she comes. *Aunt Iris never...*
4. Why not ask the others to lend a hand? *What's...*
5. Vicky said she was sorry she couldn't attend the meeting. *Vicky sent...*
6. I can't wait to get home and see my brother's new car. *I'm looking...*
7. Lily was scared that she'd say the wrong thing, so she kept quiet. *For...*
8. He didn't want the photographers to see him so he left by the back door. *To avoid...*
9. The last thing he'll do is plead guilty. *He has...*
10. Peter said he wished he hadn't retired so soon. *Peter expressed...*



UNIT 6

USE OF ENGLISH

A "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. He often exaggerates his own achievements. (*tendency*)
He his own achievements.
2. How likely am I to get a place in the team? (*prospects*)
What in the team?
3. Why not let students choose which lectures they want to go to? (*wrong*)
What they want to go to?
4. I'm sure it's quite pointless to complain to the council. (*no*)
I'm sure to the council.
5. Harriet won't mind if you borrow her umbrella. (*to*)
Harriet her umbrella.
6. It fell to me to break the news to Tamara. (*charged*)
I to Tamara.
7. In the end, I felt I had been right to leave the club. (*regrets*)
In the end, the club.
8. I certainly don't intend to reply to that rude letter from Edward. (*of*)
I rude letter from Edward.
9. The Prime Minister is unlikely to call an early general election. (*little*)
There an early general election.
10. I daren't turn on the television because the baby might wake up. (*for*)
I daren't turn on the baby.

B DERIVATIVES

A WARM RECEPTION

I was suffering from (0)..... *exhaustion* by the time the natives found me.
At first they looked at me (1)....., and shouted in a language
I didn't understand, but they treated me (2)..... when they realised
who I was and soon showed me great (3)..... and kindness.
In fact, their (4)..... knew no bounds, and I was grateful to them.
(5)....., their way of life was under threat from many directions,
even though they (6)..... guarded their traditions as much as they
could. To my (7)..... they knew a great deal about me and what
I wanted to do to help them, which (8)..... me greatly, I must say.
I promised to support them in their (9)..... struggle and said
I would present their case once again to the government.

EXHAUST
THREAT
WARM
CONSIDER
GENEROUS
TRAGIC
JEALOUS
ASTONISH
COURAGE
CONTINUE
PERSONAL



GUIDED CLOZE TEST: FILL IN

AUDIO - DESCRIPTION

The use of audio-description - a technique designed to (0)..... enable..... blind people to enjoy the theatre - was pioneered in America in 1981. (1)..... continuing to listen in the usual (2)..... to stage dialogue and sound, visually-impaired members of the audience also receive a commentary (3)..... what is being seen. (4)..... people who reluctantly give up the theatre when they begin to lose their sight, audio-description can revive a valued interest. For (5)....., however, who have always enjoyed the theatre despite (6)..... blindness, audio-description presents a whole new dimension. It is not necessary to see the lights go down to be caught up in a sense (7)..... anticipation which gradually silences and unites the audience. (8)..... the curtain has gone up, it is simply a case of total concentration so (9)..... not to miss one word, tone, nuance or stage sound that can provide a clue to some visual happening. Even without sight, (10)..... can be a delight, but there are innumerable gaps to be filled. Audio-description is the best solution. It (11)..... you in the picture by providing explanatory comments before the curtain (12)..... up, and then audio commentary is relayed via an earphone (13)..... a person who is standing at the side or back of the stage during the performance.

Obviously nobody can replace lost sight but (14)..... a wonderful and perhaps surprising extent audio-description (15)..... it possible to see a play without sight. It is an exciting glimpse of things to come.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| 0. make / let / enable / ensure | 6. entire / total / thorough / full | 11. makes / lets / keeps / takes |
| 1. As / Since / While / During | 7. in / of / for / to | 12. rises / raises / goes / lifts |
| 2. way / method / form / type | 8. Having / Upon / Once / With | 13. from / by / through / after |
| 3. for / on / to / in | 9. that / they / to / as | 14. in / at / on / to |
| 4. That / Since / For / Because | 10. theatre / stage / performance / act | 15. lets / enables / makes / has |
| 5. them / those / they / whom | | |

Fill each of the numbered blanks in the passage with one suitable word.

THE NORTH AMERICAN "BIGFOOT"

Unlike the Himalayan Yeti, or Abominable Snowman, the North American "Bigfoot" has only achieved worldwide notoriety in the last two decades. But sightings of the huge, manlike creature go (0)..... back..... to the beginning of the nineteenth century and in quantity far exceed the (1)..... of sightings of similar creatures in the Himalayas.

Today, apparently sane United States and Canadian citizens are, in their hundreds, reporting seeing creatures which do not, indeed cannot, exist in those countries. (2)..... they usually see is a tall, hairy, long-armed beast standing upright (3)..... its hind legs - an impossibility, (4)..... to most scientists.

Are we then (5)..... believe either that hundreds of North American citizens are experiencing similar hallucinations (and have (6)..... for more than 150 years), or that, (7)..... over the country, improbably tall people are giving way to an irresistible impulse to dress (8)..... in fur suits and frighten everyone? If this is so, the tricksters (9)..... really be mad, not to (10)..... supernaturally protected against gunfire. On many (11)..... hunters have fired at the creature but it rarely seemed unduly worried by the impact of bullets, (12)..... when fired from point-blank range.

Taking into (13)..... the different interpretation put on "wild man" reports in the nineteenth century, the pattern of Bigfoot's behaviour remains largely consistent throughout the 150 years (14)..... which there are records, which seems to suggest that, (15)..... Bigfoot is, it has been around for a long time.



UNIT

6 PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING

FOR THE SAKE OF THE CHILDREN



OK, on further reflection, maybe we should have gone to your favourite restaurant, but believe me this used to be a great place to eat.

Look Helen, even if it's just for the sake of the children we have to talk. OK, we differ in our opinions on many things and I know you disapprove strongly of some of the things I do, but on the whole things could be worse, and on the basis of that alone, we should try at all costs to make things work better. Who's been at fault I can't really say, but from the outset I knew my job would not be compatible with a normal family life, and I tried to impress on you when we got married that it was of the utmost importance to try and understand that, so you can't claim we were married under false pretences. On further reflection, perhaps I should have insisted on waiting a bit longer before we decided to live together, who knows? In the meantime, by way of making life a bit easier, why don't you get in contact with your sister and go on a little holiday? You've been at a low ebb for a while and you would benefit from a few days away. I'll leave the car at your disposal.

A Fill in with the appropriate prepositions.

- suspect ⇨ suspicion ➤ my opinion ⇨ my mind
- mistake ⇨ error ➤ closed doors ⇨ secret
- persist ⇨ insist ➤ the record ⇨ confidence
- grateful ⇨ appreciative ➤ retrospect ⇨ hindsight



With hindsight, maybe you should have taken the bus, Mustafal.

REPHRASING

- be prone/apt to ⇨ have/there is a tendency (to/towards)
- show ⇨ be a sign of ⇨ be evidence/proof/indicative of ⇨ bear witness to
- affect ⇨ have an effect/influence/impact on ⇨ take its/a (heavy) toll on
- in danger ⇨ at risk ⇨ at stake ⇨ under threat ➤ object to ⇨ not take kindly to
- understand ⇨ make sense of ⇨ take sth to mean ⇨ take in ⇨ get the picture/message

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. If he continues to be rude to her, she's going to give him a piece of her mind. (*persists*)
If he going to give him a piece of her mind.
2. What he said is evidence of the fact that he's a liar. (*witness*)
What he said a liar.
3. Mrs Collins said she was very grateful for all our hard work. (*appreciative*)
Mrs Collins said she hard work.
4. Working in the mines all those years had a very bad effect on his health. (*toll*)
Working in the mines his health.
5. Three hundred jobs are in danger at the factory. (*threat*)
Three hundred jobs factory.
6. He conceded that, in retrospect, he had made the wrong decision. (*hindsight*)
He conceded that, decision.
7. The police firmly believe that Andy was responsible for the accident. (*suspect*)
The police the accident.
8. He objected to being called incompetent. (*kindly*)
He incompetent.
9. Our photocopier frequently breaks down. (*prone*)
Our photocopier down.
10. You should know that, in my opinion, it's an insane idea. (*mind*)
You should know that, idea.

LOOK - PAY EXPRESSIONS



- ◇ look daggers at sb: look angrily at sb
 * Janet **looked daggers at Paul** when he mentioned her mistake in front of the boss.
- ◇ look down one's nose at: show contempt for
 * I **wouldn't look down my nose at her** if I were you - she's a nicer person than you'll ever be.
- ◇ look on the bright/dark side (of): be optimistic/pessimistic about
 * Don't be so upset about losing your job. **Look on the bright side** - you'll have more time to spend with the children.
- ◇ look before you leap: think carefully before doing anything rash
 * You're always making hasty decisions that get you into trouble. You should **look before you leap**.
- ◇ look the other way: pretend not to notice; ignore
 * There are thousands of homeless people, but the government just **looks the other way**.
- ◇ look sb in the eye/face: look at sb directly, without showing fear
 * She could not **look me in the eye** and tell me the truth.



And don't expect me to pay attention to any more of your stupid stories about axe murderers, Cedric.

- ◇ pay the price/penalty: suffer because of something
 * I **paid the price** for not toeing the line and was the first to be fired.
- ◇ it pays to: it's worth * It **pays to be friendly** with your neighbours.
- ◇ pay (no) attention to: give one's/no attention to
 * He **paid no attention to my warning** and got himself into trouble.
- ◇ pay tribute to: say something to show one's admiration/respect
 * They **paid tribute to his years of service in the navy**.
- ◇ pay dividends: produce benefits
 * Learning Spanish **paid dividends** when I was offered the job in Madrid.
- ◇ pay one's way: earn money to pay for oneself
 * She's so independent that she insists on **paying her own way** even when her in-laws invite her out.
- ◇ pay through the nose: pay too much
 * Get a local who speaks the language to go with you; otherwise you'll **pay through the nose**.
- ◇ pay one's (last) respects: visit as a sign of respect (to a dead person)
 * Thousands filed past to **pay their last respects** to Eva Peron.
- ◇ pay a/the compliment (of): say nice things about
 * He **paid me the compliment** of saying my speech was the funniest he'd ever heard.

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. He wouldn't stop saying flattering things about me at the reception. (compliments)
 He kept at the reception.
2. If you don't follow his advice, you'll pay far more than is necessary. (nose)
 You will don't follow his advice.
3. It's really worth knowing people in high places sometimes. (pays)
 It sometimes.
4. She regards everyone who's not a member of her family as inferior. (down)
 She isn't a member of her family.
5. We went to say our last goodbye to the great statesman at his funeral. (respects)
 We went to at his funeral.
6. She stared at him with anger in her eyes. (looked)
 She him.
7. I should think very carefully before I made that decision, if I were you. (leap)
 You that decision.
8. The trouble with Thomas is that he has such a pessimistic outlook on everything. (side)
 The trouble with Thomas is that everything.
9. Hobbs disobeyed orders and now he's suffering for it. (penalty)
 Hobbs is orders.
10. I'd prefer to pay for myself, actually. (way)
 I'd as actually.



UNIT

(6)

ADVERBS - COLLOCATIONS

SHOWBIZ SPY



Yes sir, they are widely recognised as the sharpest scissors on the market.

Moshe Takefman, the Israeli actor who is currently starring in "Fiddler on the Roof" in New York, has been positively identified as a spy for the state of Israel, according to the latest news bulletin. After enthusiastically recommending the show and heartily congratulating Takefman, President Powell said he was deeply concerned by the news, and harshly condemned the Israeli government for gravely offending a number of Arab and European states. "We are under no obligation whatsoever to answer these charges," said an Israeli spokesman. "We fervently desire good relationships with our neighbours as we always have, and we solemnly swear not to do anything that could jeopardise peace. Reports of Takefman's involvement in procuring sensitive documents from the Syrian government have been grossly exaggerated." The matter is expected to be brought up at next month's summit conference in Cairo. The American President said he would sincerely appreciate a further statement from the Israeli government to clear up the misunderstanding, if indeed there was one.

A Match the words in bold type with the sets of adverbs.

1. appreciate
2. congratulate
3. desire
3. recommend

- a. deeply, strongly
- b. highly, strongly
- c. sincerely, warmly
- c. deeply, sincerely, keenly

ADVERB COLLOCATIONS

- richly endowed, deserving
- widely recognised, understood, spoken
- unanimously decide, vote
- humbly apologise, request, beg
- deeply rooted, committed
- desperately desire, need

B ADJECTIVE & NOUN COLLOCATIONS

- I. 1. tentative
2. plain
3. safe
4. blank
5. brand
6. interior

- a. bet
- b. cheque
- c. agreement
- d. sailing
- e. decorator
- f. name

- II. 1. square
2. rough
3. foul
4. makeshift
5. spot
6. changeable

- a. play, weather
- b. accommodation
- c. check
- d. weather
- e. deal, meal
- f. guess, patch

C M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

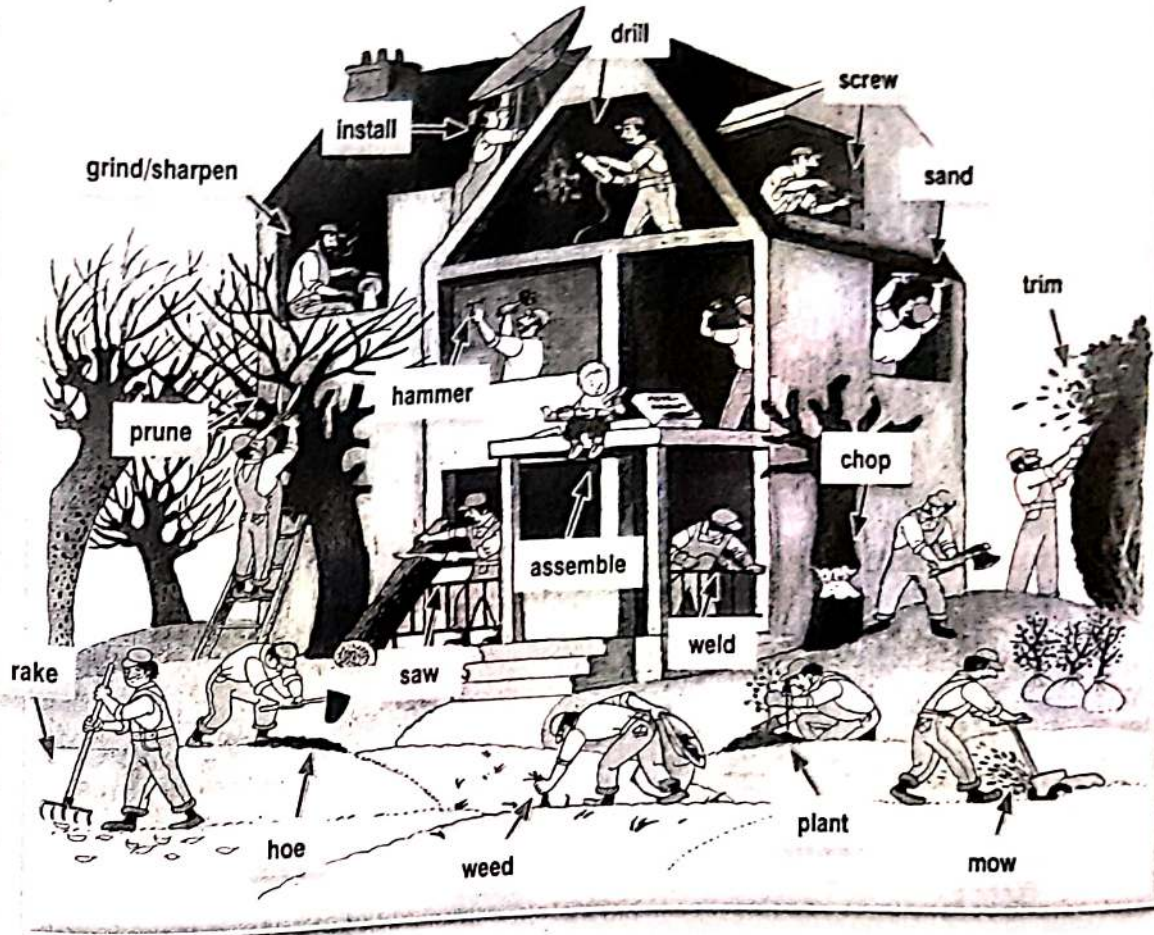
The (1)..... weather was making an already disastrous holiday even worse. First of all, because of a half-finished hotel, we had to make do with (2)..... accommodation, which annoyed me greatly, as I had (3)..... recommended we send someone ahead to make sure everything was in order. Now we (4)..... needed somewhere to stay, but it was a pretty (5)..... bet that, under the circumstances, we wouldn't find anything. It was (6)..... decided that we try somewhere different next time, and that I take charge of the arrangements personally.

- | | | | | |
|----|---------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. | a. changeable | b. spot | c. plain | d. makeshift |
| 2. | a. tentative | b. grave | c. makeshift | d. changeable |
| 3. | a. widely | b. strongly | c. deeply | d. richly |
| 4. | a. solemnly | b. highly | c. desperately | d. deeply |
| 5. | a. blank | b. safe | c. plain | d. rough |
| 6. | a. deeply | b. sincerely | c. richly | d. unanimously |

RELATED WORDS

DIY AND GARDENING

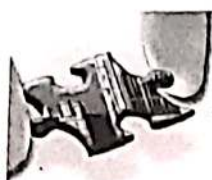
- a hard grind • have an axe to grind • be for the chop • rake up the past
- the daily grind • sharpen your wits • come/go under the hammer • a hard row to hoe
- grind to a halt • a turn of the screw • plant a seed of doubt



M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

I could see I had planted a (1)..... of doubt in Alex's mind. I had not wanted to (2)..... up the past, but he had to know what had gone on before he had become president of the company. All communications with our contacts in South America had (3)..... to a halt, and I knew several of our agents were for the (4)..... for one reason or another, after the catastrophic sales figures. Already two of our companies had come under the (5)..... and we were getting ready to sell off others. To make matters worse, Alex had an axe to (6)..... with the manager of our Bogota plant, which could only complicate things.

- | | | | | |
|----|------------|-------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. | a. seed | b. grain | c. weed | d. rake |
| 2. | a. chop | b. rake | c. mow | d. hoe |
| 3. | a. drilled | b. hammered | c. ground | d. trimmed |
| 4. | a. chop | b. hammer | c. rake | d. drill |
| 5. | a. chop | b. screw | c. drill | d. hammer |
| 6. | a. weld | b. sharpen | c. grind | d. trim |



UNIT

6

EXPRESSING...

ANGER/ ANNOYANCE

- make one's blood boil • go off (at) the deep end • see red • hit the roof
- get on one's nerves • blow one's top • throw a tantrum/fit • get under one's skin

CONTROL/ INFLUENCE

- call the tune/shots • be in the driving seat • have sb in one's pocket • have a hold on/over
- hold (no) sway over • have sb eating out of one's hand • be pulling the strings

CHANCE/ OPPORTUNITY

- strike while the iron is hot • jump at the chance/opportunity • take the opportunity
- blow it/one's chances • a chance in a million/of a lifetime • miss the boat/out on • grab the chance

DETERMINATION

- go to great/any lengths • by fair means or foul • whatever the cost • set one's heart/mind on • be set/intent
- be hellbent on • mean business • fight (sb/sth) tooth and nail • move heaven and earth • stop at nothing

A GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

- Dad a fit when Jim came home with a black eye.
By running through the stream, the escaped prisoner the hounds off his scent.
We did our best to fix the car but we in the towel when the sun set.
- She was a bundle of before the exam and could hardly write her own name.
He must have of steel to turn his back on a tiger like that.
He's been playing loud music all day and it's really getting on my now.
- You live so far beyond your that you'll be sunk if you ever lose your job.
I will get my money back from him by fair or foul.
There are several ways and of making money but not all are exactly legal.
- They've spent to the of £300 million on repairs to the subway system.
We'll have to let him call the because he's paying for everything.
You'll change your about buying the flat when you see how much it costs.
- Talking about politicians to George is like showing a(n) rag to a bull.
Let's go out and paint the town on the last evening of the holiday.
He was so insulting that I just saw and threw my drink in his face.
- I'm hoping to the big time with the new song I've just recorded.
Dad's going to the roof when he sees the new colour of your hair.
He began to drink after he went bankrupt and I think he'll soon rock bottom.

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- I applied too late for the job and let another opportunity go by once again. (boat)
By applying too late again.
- Rachel worked miracles to get Jackie the editor's job in her company. (moved)
Rachel the editor's job in her company.
- He gets annoyed when you refer to his family background. (skin)
It his family background.
- The baggage handlers will do everything they can to keep their jobs. (tooth)
The baggage handlers their jobs.
- Alexander the Great controlled most of the ancient world. (over)
Alexander the Great most of the ancient world.
- Tina flew off the handle when she found out I had taken her bus pass. (top)
Tina I had taken her bus pass.
- Barry is determined to have a holiday in the States this year. (set)
Barry in the States this year.
- In no time, the new chairman was doing exactly what the board wanted. (had)
In no time, the board hand.

USE OF ENGLISH



GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

SET A

(based on **PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING, LOOK - PAY EXPRESSIONS, ADVERBS - COLLOCATIONS, RELATED WORDS**)

- Buy this house now and your investment will over the next few years.
You must know that we all deeply the help you have given us.
Surely you that I can't take days off just because you want to go shopping!
- He gave his attacker a quick to the side of the neck and then ran for his life.
It wasn't a good dinner because my pork was tough and the vegetables cold.
I think Rebecca will be first for the when they start reducing staff.
- Whose idea was it to cut the apple tree down?
I try to look on the side of life but it's hard when I have so little money.
A soldier has to keep the brass buttons of his uniform and shiny.
- We'll have to pay a(n) on the new motorway so let's go by the old coast road.
Looking after her two elderly parents has taken a heavy on Julie's health.
The death from the earthquake has already risen to more than a thousand.
- Most children have no of danger so they must be watched carefully.
Where is the in eating strawberries when you know they make you ill?
I'm afraid I can't make of the accounts you've submitted.
- We drove to Oxford by of the Thames Valley.
I'll look the other if I see you because I don't want to get involved in this.
It's kind of you to offer me the money but I prefer to pay my own as far as possible.

SET B

(guided)

- It's no off my nose if you do no work for the exams.
She has a beautiful face but the rest of her is just and bone.
I jumped out of the car and missed being killed by the of my teeth.
- I bought a few odds and for the house at the sale.
Uncle Tom's gift will enable us to make meet for a few more months.
He once said he'd go to the of the earth for me but these days
he's too lazy to meet me at the bus-stop.
- Dialogue, not , solves international problems.
New tax laws come into on 1st April.
Greed is nearly always the driving of a war.
- Why does the cuckoo its eggs in the nests of other birds?
Would you help me the table for dinner, please?
Do you know where I could my hands on some green
silk to match these curtains?
- He was reluctant to go but by all he's enjoying himself thoroughly now.
He keeps his money in various bank under different names.
There are so many different of what happened that we'll
probably never know the whole truth.
- I shall keep a(n) mind until I hear everyone else's suggestions.
They said it was a(n) and shut case because only Jenkins
was at the scene of the murder.
The Smiths keep house at the weekends and everyone
is welcome to drop in.

• meat
• flesh
• skin

• ends
• tips
• edges

• effect
• force
• result

• place
• put
• lay

• means
• tales
• accounts

• wide
• open
• clear



HEALTH

Good health, as the ancients well knew, is more than merely the absence of **disease** and **infirmity**. It is a state of complete **physical, mental** and **social well-being**. The science of preserving health is known as **hygiene**, and concerns itself with the practices of proper diet, **clothing** and **shelter**, **exercise** and **sensible periods of rest**. **Sanitation** is the science of **cleanliness**, one of the branches of hygiene. Nearly every community has its **Health Board**, whose duty is to supervise **public health** matters. A local board will inspect water, milk, food, restaurants and buildings to make certain they meet **satisfactory standards of sanitation**. Hygiene is a simple matter. A person must keep his clothing and body clean, he should **bathe** frequently, wash his hands before eating and **brush his teeth** at least twice daily. Drinking water should be **pure**, and food properly **stored** and cooked. **Moderate** exercise should be taken regularly. **Mental health** is **stimulated** by friendly **contact** with other people, an occasional **change of scene** and relaxing **hobbies**. Loss of health may result from disease, accidents, **inherited biological defects**, **hazards** of climate or surroundings, **mental strain** or old age. However, from the moment an infant child enters this world it is subject to attack by various diseases, and in order to combat them it will need an **immune system** which is both **natural** and **acquired**. The study of immune systems is known as **immunology**. **Natural immunity** is **inherited**, and human beings are naturally immune to most animal diseases, and certain animals are immune to many diseases that affect man. **Acquired immunity** is made possible by antibodies, substances in the blood that fight disease-producing **bacteria** or **viruses**. Each kind of antibody resists only one disease. **Acquired immunity** may be **active** or **passive**. **Active immunity** is acquired when an individual has any of several diseases such as **smallpox**, **cholera** or **mumps**. It may also be acquired by the **injection** of killed or weakened disease-producing bacteria or viruses, which produces **antibodies** in the blood. **Passive immunity** is acquired by an injection of **serum** which already contains antibodies and has been taken from an animal which is already immune. Its effect, however, is not of long duration.

IDIOMS - EXPRESSIONS

- **have sb in stitches**: make sb laugh so much that they cannot stop
- **make no bones about it**: say sth which you believe to be the truth
- **one's blood runs cold**: used to express sudden fear, even terror, in a situation
- **be a bundle of nerves**: be very worried or nervous about sth (usu. about to happen)
- **bleeding heart**: someone who becomes sentimental over causes they can do nothing about
- **in one's blood**: sth (talent, evil trait, characteristic) that comes very naturally to sb
- **break one's neck**: try one's hardest • **sick to death**: fed up, angry, very unhappy with a situation

E KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. I have to write everything out in triplicate and I'm completely fed up with it. (*death*)
I'm everything out in triplicate.
2. Carolyn's just another of those people fighting a lost cause, I'm afraid. (*heart*)
Carolyn's , I'm afraid.
3. Jeremy's an expert skier; it just comes naturally to him somehow. (*blood*)
Jeremy's extremely good somehow.
4. Philip worked his very hardest to get through his exams. (*neck*)
Philip through his exams.
5. Wendy suddenly felt petrified when the lights went out and she was left in the dark. (*cold*)
Wendy's when the lights went out and she was left in the dark.
6. Jenny couldn't relax at all during the interview. (*bundle*)
Jenny during the interview.
7. You can be sure of one thing - Manchester will win the league. (*make*)
You need - Manchester will win the league.
8. The audience didn't stop laughing for two hours during *Reluctant Heroes*. (*stitches*)
The play *Reluctant Heroes* well over two hours.



B OPEN CLOZE TEST

EFFECTS OF ALCOHOL

Millions of young women in Britain may be drinking themselves to death. Twice as (1) many women from the age of 18 to 24 as men are drinking at danger level or above, and figures show an alarming increase (2) the number of young women developing serious liver disease. The change has come (3) because they start drinking (4) earlier than previous generations and carry on for many more years before settling (5) A frightening prospect is (6) alcohol may even stunt the development of unborn babies.

Three other causes for concern are failure to treat high blood-pressure, an increase in the potentially lethal E. coli 0157 food-poisoning bug, and failure to give proper treatment to patients with epilepsy.

But the most shocking finding concerns cirrhosis - permanent scarring and damage to the liver. (7) started, it is irreversible, though the decline may be halted by treatment. The condition is now more (8) to kill women than the much better-known Alzheimer's disease. Some scientists believe that genetic differences (9) the sexes make men's bodies better (10) breaking down alcohol before it causes physical damage.

The drinks industry is partly to blame. They have produced new (11) of bars and new drinks which are targeted at young people and women drinkers.

Some of the effects of alcohol are:

- Alcoholic optic neuritis, which, (12) exceptional cases, can lead to blindness (13) to deficiencies in vitamin B1 and zinc.
- Cancer of the mouth, larynx and tonsils. • Dementia - the permanent loss of brain cells.
- Inflammation of the heart, cardiovascular damage and arrhythmia, irregular beating or fluttering of the (14)
- Increase in the (15) of breast cancer in women.
- Damage to the colon and pancreas, the latter sometimes fatal. • Gum disease.
- Damage to the immune system, increasing the risk of pneumonia; tuberculosis and (16) infectious diseases.

C GAPPED SENTENCES

1. My doctor says I have a very low of sugar in my blood.
Do you think Joseph was on the when he said he'd invest in our company?
The town lies below sea, so the flooding here was particularly bad.
2. To prevent diseases such as yellow fever from , we can be given injections.
Greater international aid is needed for the economies of Third World countries.
Some people enjoy their own photographs.
3. Not only are they unemployed, they now face the of becoming homeless.
Grandad has a greater of recovery now he has gone to hospital.
The new player looks like a good for the mid-field position.
4. I don't know what you think but that man seemed to be on drugs to me.
It's time you got yourself some different friends.
How is the Empire State Building, exactly?
5. Doctor, we have a(n) of chicken-pox in the children's ward.
By the way, could you bring a(n) of beer with you on Saturday night?
The minister of finance is bringing a(n) of libel against the "National Herald".
6. Footballer Michael Owen has a(n) left foot.
It's tragic when someone dies of a(n) dose of drugs.
Hand-guns are in the hands of the wrong people.



UNIT

6

USE OF ENGLISH

REMEMBERING NAMES

No one's ability to remember names is perfect. Yet this important skill gives you the advantage in business and personal relationships. It is often a ticket to friendship, a closed deal or a new partnership, and it generates instant goodwill in a way that no other courtesy can. Peter Dupré, a restaurateur, makes a point of remembering names. When one of his regular customers introduced him to a friend named Connie recently, he made sure to thank her by name as she left the restaurant.
line 6 → "From the pleasantly shocked look on her face, I could tell that not only would she come back, but she would bring in new customers," Mr Dupré said, "Remembering one person's name in my business can get you a hundred new patrons."

Forgetting someone's name, on the other hand, can cause hurt feelings and make you feel socially inept and uncomfortable. Even worse, it can create a powerfully negative first impression that works against you long afterwards.

Memory lapses often boil down to a question of concentration. Each day our brains are bombarded with information that is evaluated in a complex sorting system. Generally we store important information in long-term memory and hold less meaningful data in short-term memory. The challenge is to take the commonplace - like someone's name - and somehow make it significant so it gets deposited in long-term memory. When you find yourself wrestling with a forgotten name ten seconds after an introduction, it's because you were inattentive. This often happens because we are preoccupied with ourselves. When you are meeting someone new, clear your thoughts of outside concerns. If your mind wanders during an introduction, ask that the name be repeated. At large gatherings, decide in advance to whom you are going to pay attention, because you'll never remember more than a few names from any group. It also helps to call ahead for names and titles before attending a business or social event.

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

1. generates goodwill
2. makes a point of
3. inept
4. boil down to
5. bombarded with
6. commonplace
7. inattentive
8. preoccupied with

- a. with no skill
- b. flooded/showered with
- c. ordinary
- d. does sth in a deliberate, obvious way
- e. be the most important aspect/factor
- f. produces friendly, helpful feelings
- g. continuously concerned with/worried about
- h. not listening or watching carefully

E Answer with a word or short phrase.









1. What is the writer trying to convey by the words "pleasantly shocked" (line 6) ?
.....
2. Explain in your own words why it is normal that we often forget someone's name quickly, and what can be done to rectify this.
.....



A QUESTION OF IMAGE

If you try to memorise names by rote, you'll probably forget the information quickly. But if you dramatise names and faces with memorable images, you'll most likely recall them with ease. The best way to retain new names is by "association-exaggeration" or forging connections between unlike things. Here's how: after you've been told a person's name, focus on his face. Is there something particularly interesting or attractive about it? Is the hair bright red? Are the eyebrows heavy? Are the eyes striking? Select just one feature and commit it to memory by exaggerating or animating it. If the person has red hair, set it on fire in your mind's eye. If the eyebrows are bushy, see them wriggling like worms. You have met hundreds of people in your lifetime, so it is crucial that your brain realises this face must be remembered. Once you have memorised a particular feature, transform the person's name into an image through rudimentary and even amusing connections. Say you've just met Fred Smith. If you visualise Fred Astaire in a blacksmith's outfit, you'd have to work hard to get Fred Smith out of your mind. After you've found a dramatic image for a name, place it over the distinct feature of the person's face. If you can make the images interactive, then you will increase recall. For example, upon meeting Dennis, you might associate his name with "tennis". You can then substitute a racquet for his long face. Don't be put off by bizarre concepts that come to mind; strange and ridiculous images are memorable ones. The final key to remembering a person's name is review. During your conversation, say the name as often as seems appropriate, and afterwards you may want to write it down and the imagery you have connected with it.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. by rote |  | a. remember, memorise |
| 2. forging connections |  | b. basic, rough, unfinished |
| 3. commit to memory |  | c. by repetition |
| 4. bushy |  | d. form a picture of |
| 5. crucial |  | e. making links |
| 6. rudimentary |  | f. extremely important |
| 7. visualise |  | g. having influence on each other |
| 8. interactive |  | h. growing thickly |

Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. What does the writer mean by "association-exaggeration" (line 3)?

.....

.....

2. What does the writer suggest about outlandish and bizarre associations?

.....

3. In a paragraph of between 50 and 70 words, summarise in your own words, as much as possible, what stages you might go through in order to remember someone's name.



UNIT

6

READING

Your are going to read an extract from a newspaper article. Seven paragraphs have been removed from the extract. Choose from the paragraphs A-H the one which fits each gap (1-7). There is one extra paragraph which you do not need to use.

THE BUSH DETECTIVES

In the tiny Australian town of Ti Tree on the long road linking Alice Springs to Darwin, Senior Constable Mike Petery is taking a well-earned break at the police station when a local road worker walks in. "My car's been stolen," the man tells him. "I left it in front of the pub." In most police forces the only course open would be to take down all the details and list the vehicle as stolen on centralised records.

1

Identifying a man by his footprint - no easy task even for a forensic scientist - is almost routine to Hines and his colleagues. "After 32 years of working with trackers, I'm still amazed by their skill," says Andy McNeill, a former Assistant Police Commissioner of the Northern Territory Police. "I've even seen them follow men over miles of bare rock."

Trackers have been used by the Northern Territory police force since it was established in 1870. Scores of people owe their lives, others their prison terms, to trackers' ability to detect minutely subtle signs - a disturbed pebble, maybe, or the shrivelled body of an ant crushed underfoot.

2

A tall, rangy man with a shock of white hair, Egan was the star of a manhunt that has passed into legend in the Northern Territory. An Aborigine, Billy Ben, murdered another man and took off into the bush with his dog. A skilled tracker himself, Ben covered his moves and expected his dog's pawprints to be lost among those of numberless wild dingoes. But he reckoned without Egan, who stubbornly followed the dog for 18 days until he got his man. Sitting beside his Alice Springs camp, Egan uses his palms, fingers and knuckles to trace lifelike prints in the sand.

3

His father showed him how sharply dug-in bold footprints marked the path of a bounding kangaroo. Heavy, broad marks close by the prints indicated that the kangaroo was feeding or moving leisurely, using its tail as a balance.

Later, as part of manhood initiation ceremonies, Egan was taught how to track humans - how to distinguish footprints. "No feet are the same," he says. "The shapes of toes, heels, insteps and depth of imprints vary."

4

Jabaltjari led police to the suspect, hiding in the back garden of a local house. The man was later convicted

and gaoled. McNeill says, "It is unlikely that the offender would have been located without Jabaltjari's expert tracking ability."

I listen keenly as Egan reveals some of his bush lore. Tomorrow I will need to know all that I can absorb. For Egan and I have devised a plan to test his remarkable skills. We will drive into the desert, and Egan will give me an hour's start. Then he will track me down. "Trick me all you can," he says with a smile.

Soon after dawn next morning, together with Egan's wife and three children, we set out in a four-wheel-drive truck from Alice Springs.

5

After two hours we stop for tea, brewed on a fire. As we sit, Egan scans the earth for prints. "What's this one, Francine?" he asks, pointing at slim, elongated marks etched in the sand. "Goanna, Daddy," the seven-year-old replies with a shy smile.

We drive on, and just before noon Egan stops again. He climbs from the truck, and eyes some pawprints followed by the broad drag of a heavy tail. "Kangaroo," Egan whispers. "Came by here a short time ago, feeding." He narrows his eyes against the sun. "Out there," he says softly, pointing across the plain. I raise my binoculars but see no sign of life.

6

There is nothing here but low scrub and clumps of spinifex grass punctuating bare earth. I scan the horizon. *I'll head for that distant hill, I tell myself; it will give me a sense of direction.* The red sand has a thin surface crust, with softer sand beneath. With each step, my shoes make a perfect, unmistakable print. *You're making things too easy. Find some hard ground.* I stride out, looking for a stretch of bare rock that will throw Egan off my trail.

7

For several hundred yards I continue without a trace of my progress. When I reach the edge of the rock, I change direction, heading again for the distant hill. Every few minutes I double back, dodging among crumbling anthills or pushing through patches of thick scrub.

My throat is dry as dust. Foolishly, I've brought no water. I look at my watch. It's an hour since Egan left me. By now he will be on my trail. The country to the left is covered in scrubby acacia; to the right the tree cover is sparser. *He'll expect me to head for the heavily timbered land, I reason, so I'll go the opposite way.*



A

As I walk, I feel the hot sun on my back, and the sweat builds under the brim of my hat. I am a city-dweller; this strange, empty place is alien territory. *Remember what Egan told you*, I nudge myself. *Use his knowledge against him*. Ahead is a low hill where sand gives way to bare rock. Allowing myself a fiendish smile, I begin circling the hill as I approach, so it looks as if I am changing direction. Once on the rock, I step carefully between patches of sand, meticulously avoiding any loose stones.

B

But Petery has a far more formidable option: he calls in Jimmy Hines, one of several dozen trackers used by the Northern Territory police force. Together they walk the few hundred yards to the town's only pub. "Let's have a look," says Hines as his eyes scan the shoemarks left in the earth car park alongside the tyre marks of the stolen car. "See there," he tells Petery. "The right footprint is deeper on one side. That'll be a young fella I know down at the camp." Later, confronted by the police, the young man admits the crime.

C

Obedying the outback's tight-lipped code, I restrict my thanks to a nod. But Egan surely detects my immense, grateful relief. As we head back to the truck, retracing my tracks, he points out the clues I left behind. Seeing them through the eyes of a master, the bent grass, moved twigs and disturbed pebbles are as clear as if an elephant had just charged through the scrub.

D

Psychology, too, plays an important part. "You must put yourself in the other person's mind," says Teddy Egan, the territory's most celebrated tracker, now retired. "You must ask yourself: If I were walking here, which way would I go?" How are these extraordinary skills developed? "Like most Aboriginal culture, it's passed on by word of mouth and example," says Egan, a full-initiate of the Warlpiri tribe.

E

"He's resting under that tree." Egan points again, indicating a gnarled tree about a mile to the north. There is something out there, but to me it's just a tiny smudge on the binocular lens. Then the kangaroo spots us. Suddenly the smudge bounds off into a clump of mulga trees. Egan smiles looking at the empty vastness around us. "This is a good place," he says. "I'll drive away and come back in an hour to find you. Go where you like. Try to confuse me." Egan departs in a cloud of dust, and I am left alone.

F

In just a few seconds he fashions the distinctive shapes of kangaroo, human and emu tracks. "This was how my father and mother trained me back in our tribal land," he says. "They drew pictures in the soft earth."

Egan was six when he went out with tribeswomen, following the wiggly trails of small creatures like lizards and snakes. At the age of ten he was allowed to join the men's hunting parties, tracking larger animals.

G

Our destination is an arid area more than 125 miles to the north-west. All morning we travel through a stark red desert, as hostile and barren as a moonscape. As we leave the road and head deep into the outback, Egan keeps up a running commentary to his alert children.

"That place is good for goanna," he says, pointing to a sandy plain littered with dead tree trunks. Then he gestures at a tree, surprisingly heavy with leaves, saying, "That tree has good-tasting berries."

H

Using these skills, trackers can even follow trails through urban areas. Four years ago, Egan's nephew and police aide, Jabaltjari, tracked a suspected rapist through the streets of Alice Springs. After the attack the suspect walked home, straying occasionally from the tarmac road onto the sandy verge. Using a torch, Jabaltjari identified a shoeprint at the scene of the attack and took up the trail. Often he lost the tracks when his quarry crossed the road, but patiently scanned the verges until he picked up the shoeprint again.



UNIT 7

PASSIVE VOICE - CAUSATIVE FORM

PASSIVE VOICE

Nothing is more irritating than not being invited to a party you wouldn't be seen dead at.

Bill Vaughan

A SIMPLE TENSES

- Have they made a decision yet?
- **Has a decision been made yet?**
- The police arrested three people on drugs charges.
- **Three people were arrested on drugs charges.**
- The judge will determine how long he spends in prison.
- **How long he spends in prison will be determined by the judge.**

B PROGRESSIVE TENSES

- We are dealing with your case.
- **Your case is being dealt with.**
- I had no transport because the car was in for a service.
- **I had no transport because the car was being serviced.**
- Big changes are in the pipeline.
- **Big changes are being planned.**

C PASSIVE GERUND

- He did not take kindly to being told he had made a mistake.
- Ted resented having been turned down because of his age.

D PERSONAL/IMPERSONAL STRUCTURE

present

- They say that he bribes local politicians regularly.
- **It is said that he bribes local politicians regularly.**
- **He is said to bribe local politicians regularly.**
- **Local politicians are said to be bribed by him regularly.**

past

- They think that the accident was caused by pilot error.
- **It is thought that the accident was caused by pilot error.**
- **The accident is thought to have been caused by pilot error.**
- **Pilot error is thought to have been the cause of the accident.**
- It was said that he had two wives.
- **He was said to have (had) two wives.**

E INFINITIVE/GERUND > SHOULD

- The government decided to abolish the outdated law.
- **The government decided that the outdated law should be abolished.**
- They suggested/advised/recommended rewriting the book.
- **It was suggested/advised/recommended that the book (should) be rewritten.**
- He insisted on being given a refund.
- **He insisted that he should be given a refund.**

F BARE INFINITIVE > FULL INFINITIVE

see, hear, watch, make...

- They heard him admit his involvement.
- **He was heard to admit his involvement.**
- They made them wait on a cold platform.
- **They were made to wait on a cold platform.**

G NEGATIVE WORDS

- Nobody can expect a doctor to work twenty hours a day.
- **No doctor can be expected to work twenty hours a day.**
- They did not say anything about it after that.
- **Not a thing was said about it after that.**
- This is the first time I've been asked to do such a thing.
- **Never before have I been asked to do such a thing.**

H ACTIVE VERB > PASSIVE MEANING

- This machine is easy to use.
- Bargains like that are hard to find.
- This salad tastes lovely.
- It's a difficult situation to understand.
- There was nothing to eat in the fridge.
- She sounds relaxed.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. It is widely believed that Bach shaped the course of the history of music. **Bach is...**
2. They originally thought that the tomb contained the body of a pharaoh. **The tomb...**
3. They are re-routing all flights through Manchester airport. **All flights...**
4. The company decided to axe fifty more jobs. **The company decided that...**
5. We insisted that they gave us first-class seats. **We insisted on...**
6. In those days they considered the sun to be no less than a god. **The sun...**
7. They noticed that the monkey's behaviour changed considerably in a larger cage. **The monkey's...**
8. That was the last time the subject was mentioned. **Nothing has...**
9. The reason we were held up was because they were repaving the road. **As the road...**
10. He's never to be found in his office. **He's impossible...**

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

CHANGES IN PARTS OF SPEECH

VERBS > PHRASAL VERBS

- They've had to **cancel** the meeting. ⇒ *The meeting has had to be called off.*
- The police **are investigating** your complaint. ⇒ *Your complaint is being looked into.*
- It is **possible** that he will refuse. ⇒ *The possibility that he will refuse cannot be ruled out.*

VERBS > PHRASAL VERBS

- **steal** ⇨ *be robbed of* • **become** ⇨ *be made* • **consider** ⇨ *be regarded/thought of as*
- **consist of** ⇨ *be composed of/comprised of/made up of* • **be necessary** ⇨ *be obliged to*

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

- The barrel **must be kept upright**. ⇒ *The barrel must not be laid on its side.*
- She **couldn't find** her doll, though she looked everywhere. ⇒ *Her doll was nowhere to be found.*
- We **were not informed** of the details. ⇒ *The details were not made known to us.*
- The disease **is affecting** more and more people.
⇒ *An increased higher/greater/larger number of people is being affected by the disease.*
- Racial harmony **cannot be achieved** without concessions on all sides.
⇒ *Concessions on all sides is the only way that racial harmony can be achieved.*
- They **will try** to refloat the ship again on tomorrow's high tide.
⇒ *Another attempt to refloat the ship will be made on tomorrow's high tide.*
- The press **heavily criticised** the party for not carrying out its promises.
⇒ *Heavy criticism was aimed/launched/directed at the party by the press for not carrying out its promises.*
- The situation **is not likely to improve** in the near future.
⇒ *An improvement in the situation is not envisaged in the near future.*
- They **offered only some of** the guests champagne. ⇒ *Not all of the guests were given champagne.*
- It **is your job to know**. ⇒ *You are supposed to know.*
- The sight of eagles **is rare** in this part of the country. ⇒ *Eagles are rarely/seldom seen in this part of the country.*

CAUSATIVE FORM

HAVE/GET SOMETHING DONE

- We **must have/get** the roof repaired.
- We **must have someone repair** the roof.
- We **must get someone to repair** the roof.
- **See (to it) that** these letters are posted immediately.
- **Get/Have** these letters posted immediately.
- Someone **is installing** central heating for Mrs Clark.
- Mrs Clark **is having** central heating installed.

OTHER CHANGES

- He **was having** his temperature taken when we went in.
- Mr Barry **will have you playing** Mozart in no time.
- The bar **has had** its licence taken away.
- Turn down that radio or you'll **have the baby crying** again.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. It is quite possible that none of us will be chosen for the post. *The possibility...*
2. You don't often see snow at this time of the year. *Snow...*
3. They only gave a few shareholders the option of buying more shares. *Not all the...*
4. It is not necessary to declare goods with a value of less than five hundred pounds. *You are...*
5. Someone will have to come and fix the leak in the water tank. *We'll...*
6. During the football match, someone broke Larry's ankle. *Larry...*
7. Nobody informed us of the decision to cancel funds for the hospital. *The decision...*
8. A massive bomb destroyed the barracks. *The barracks were blown...*
9. The Supreme Court is reviewing George Taylor's case. *George Taylor is...*
10. You find the occasional loggerhead turtle in these waters. *The occasional...*
11. His bike is missing; someone must have stolen it. *He must...*
12. After a twenty-five-year wait, he finally became chairman. *He was...*



UNIT 7

USE OF ENGLISH

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- They've stopped people from smoking on most airlines now. (*banned*)
Smoking now.
- The negotiators will try to break the deadlock again tomorrow. (*made*)
Another to break the deadlock tomorrow.
- We'll have to investigate this matter more thoroughly. (*into*)
This matter thoroughly.
- Customs officials are stopping more travellers than usual this week. (*of*)
An customs officials this week.
- Not all of the drugs are being tested. (*out*)
Tests of the drugs.
- Sales are unlikely to recover before the end of the year. (*envisaged*)
A the end of the year.
- There is the possibility that further changes will be made. (*ruled*)
The possibility of out.
- The bottle must not be laid on its side. (*kept*)
The bottle upright.
- This contract is not binding until we both sign it. (*bound*)
We both sign it.
- The mechanism consists of several interlocking parts. (*up*)
The mechanism parts.

DERIVATIVES

EVASIVE ACTION

It was a cold (0) evening and growing colder by the minute.
Without (1), a shot was fired across our bows in the
gathering dusk. A foreign warship had (2) appeared out of
the gloom, which (3) evasive action on our part. We could not
hope to fight them as their (4) was vastly superior to ours -
we could only run. One direct hit from them could easily (5) us or
even send us to the bottom of the sea. They were getting (6)
close at this point. Luckily, they were not firing too (7), and their
second shot landed (8) far off our port bow. I desperately tried
once again to contact our sister ship, but all (9) was
impossible, it seemed. It was disheartening to feel so (10)

RAIN
WARN
MYSTERY
NECESSARY
EQUIP
ABLE
COMFORT
ACCURATE
HARM
COMMUNICATE
DEFENCE

GUIDED CLOZE TEST: FILL IN

AUTOMATION

It (0)..... widely recognised that we must automate our industry or (1)..... we shall find (2)..... unable to compete. But technical changes in the field of automation are (3)..... rapid that it is difficult for anyone not directly involved to understand (4)..... and what they imply. One cannot reasonably expect the local Member of Parliament, mainly concerned (5)..... he is bound to be (6)..... the many day-to-day problems of his constituency, to go (7)..... more deeply into the subject (8)..... to examine the likely effects of automation (9)..... employment, and therefore upon voting, in his area. Yet, fortunately, politics are not only the domain of politicians, but necessarily involve the participation of citizens. It is an urgent political task to educate the people as a (10)..... so as to make them aware (11)..... the broad problems and opportunities of automation, and we must strive (12)..... a national policy on this issue. One of the bases on which (13)..... a policy ought to rest is an organisation, perhaps made (14)..... jointly of government, industry and trade unions, which should engage in a vigorous drive to (15)..... people understand the full implications of automation.

0. has / being / is / must

1. not / else / other / alternate

2. that / us / out / ourselves

3. so / much / very / too

4. how / which / them / that

5. that / with / as / for

6. for / on / with / of

7. further / even / much / so

8. than / that / for / without

9. of / to / upon / from

10. lot / group / whole / mass

11. on / in / through / of

12. for / on / to / in

13. having / such / why / therefore

14. of / with / up / for

15. get / make / force / educate

E Fill each of the numbered blanks in the passage with one suitable word.

CHILDHOOD AUTISM

Childhood autism* was first clearly recognised in 1943. Its physiological and psychological origins, however, still (0)..... *remain*..... a mystery. At (1)....., it was alleged that it was caused by lack of love in infancy associated particularly (2)..... a middle-class upbringing. (3)..... misconception added to the suffering of parents with an autistic child, but it has since been thoroughly discredited. Autism is caused by brain (4)....., occurring before or during birth, which (5)..... result from a shortage of oxygen or faulty chromosomes. It afflicts between two and ten children per 10,000 and although its symptoms first (6)..... apparent at the age of three, they continue (7)..... life.

Its three main symptoms are an inability to relate (8)..... other people, an impairment in communication, of which (9)..... striking form is answering everything literally - for example, saying "Yes" when asked "Can you pass the salt?" but not actually (10)..... activities. It, and following elaborate routines and rituals to the exclusion of (11)..... This last trait may (12)..... to explain the phenomenon of the autistic child who, (13)..... his handicaps, becomes highly talented (14)..... some such task (15)..... calendar calculation or remembering music.

* autism: a person's inability to respond to his environment



UNIT 7

PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING



In comparison with all those blind morons and half-witted women drivers daddy's always talking about, you're a good driver, Mummy!

POLAR EXPEDITION

In comparison with other Polar expeditions, Ito Takatsu, the great Japanese explorer, was exposed to tremendous hardship. Rarely do these expeditions pass off without a hitch, but no one realised the extent of the tragedy until the frozen bodies of the party were found. First of all there was controversy over the young team Takatsu chose to accompany him. He should have known from experience that more knowledgeable members were required, and unbelievably, stores vital to anyone on expedition were not even taken. However, they set off in high spirits, apparently without a care in the world.

Then they ran into some of the worst weather ever known in that part of the world, and in the absence of experienced guides they were doomed. Although soon out of provisions and with nothing to feed their dogs on, Takatsu was under the impression he was near an American base. At the crack of dawn, in the company of two other team members he set off to find it, but perished. The rest of the group were not in communication with anyone and it was only a matter of days before they all died, too.

A FILL IN with the appropriate prepositions.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| • the sake | ⇒ the interests | • suitable | ⇒ keeping |
| • little warning | ⇒ short notice | • judging | ⇒ the look |
| • general | ⇒ the whole | • one | ⇒ harmony |



REPHRASING

- **expect** ⇒ in expectation/anticipation of ⇒ lead sb to expect ⇒ come as no surprise ⇒ (not) come/live up to one's expectations ⇒ fall short of one's expectations
- **fail** ⇒ not work ⇒ go wrong ⇒ come to nothing ⇒ do no good ⇒ fall through ⇒ draw a blank ⇒ be doomed to failure
- **finish** ⇒ come to an end ⇒ draw to a close ⇒ be on the last lap ⇒ put the finishing touches to ⇒ tie up the loose ends ⇒ be finished with ⇒ have done with
- **let/allow** ⇒ give one's permission/consent ⇒ give sb the go ahead ⇒ not stand in sb's way ⇒ bend the rules ⇒ make an exception

Human contact
vital to survival

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- They sent new instructions with very little warning and that caused a lot of trouble. (*notice*)
New instructions caused a lot of trouble.
- Judging by the outside of the house, very rich people live there. (*look*)
By, very rich people live there.
- In my opinion, his remarks were totally unsuitable for the occasion. (*keeping*)
In my opinion, the occasion.
- We're nearly finished; we've just got a couple of small things to do before we leave. (*loose*)
There are just before we leave.
- That the socialists won the election was totally expected. (*came*)
The socialists' surprise.
- I knew this plan would not work from the start. (*failure*)
I knew from the start.
- The Managing Director arrived just as the meeting was about to end, as usual. (*drawing*)
The Managing Director arrived just as, as usual.
- Your father will never allow you to marry Alec. (*his*)
Your father Alec.

BREAK - SET EXPRESSIONS



- ◇ break even: make neither a profit nor a loss in business
 - ▶ Adding up all our expenses and all our takings for the year, I think we'll just **break even**.
- ◇ break a/the (all time) record: beat the best success/performance of sb/sth; achieve a new high level
 - ▶ Titanic **broke the all time record** for box office sales for any one film.
- ◇ break the bank: cost a lot of money
 - ▶ It will **break the bank** if we buy a new car this year.
- ◇ break the back of: complete the main/worst part of a job
 - ▶ We don't have to do all the Christmas shopping today, but it would be good to **break the back of** it.
- ◇ break fresh/new ground: do sth completely new or different/in a different way
 - ▶ Scientists have **broken new ground** in the field of human cloning.
- ◇ break the ice: say/do sth to make sb feel comfortable (at a party/meeting)
 - ▶ She looked so nervous that David started talking about the weather to **break the ice**.
- ◇ break the news: tell sb news that will have a good/bad effect on them
 - ▶ Who is going to **break the news** to Jim that his car has been stolen?
- ◇ break one's neck: injure oneself badly; do sth quickly in order to finish it on time
 - ▶ Tina had to **break her neck** to get the tax forms finished by the end of the month.



I see you've **set your sights** on an early promotion, Heep.

- ◇ set a/the pace: establish/determine the speed at which sth is done
 - ▶ He **set such a fast pace** that the other athletes found it hard to keep up.
- ◇ set the record straight: show that what has been considered true is, in fact, not
 - ▶ Let me **set the record straight** once and for all; it was Jean's mistake, not mine.
- ◇ set a precedent: establish a way of doing sth that others can copy
 - ▶ By not punishing him for his truancy, the headmaster has **set a very dangerous precedent**.
- ◇ set a/the tone/pattern/trend/(high) standards: do sth that others copy
 - ▶ Star Wars **set the trend** for scores of sci-fi films which were made in the eighties.
- ◇ set one's sights/heart/mind on: be determined to do/be sth
 - ▶ Sandy has **set her sights on** becoming a pilot.
- ◇ set the ball rolling/sth in motion: begin an activity/conversation
 - ▶ The manager **set the ball rolling/set the meeting in motion** by congratulating everyone on their work.
- ◇ set foot (in): enter/arrive at a place
 - ▶ After the waiter tried to cheat me, I never **set foot in** that restaurant again.
- ◇ set great store by: consider very important
 - ▶ I **set great store by** your advice.
- ◇ set free: release (from captivity)
 - ▶ Animal rights activists **set all the caged birds free**.

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. There is nothing Maurice wants more than to be a professional musician. (set)
Maurice a professional musician.
2. You could have seriously injured yourself climbing in through the upstairs window. (broken)
You could the upstairs window.
3. In a feeble attempt to make everyone relax, John cracked a joke. (break)
In a a joke.
4. Her parents have forbidden her to go to pubs. (set)
She is pubs.
5. Jenkins is the first person to have scored so many goals in the history of the school team. (broke)
Jenkins many goals in the history of the school team.
6. The police will keep him in custody until they have proof he is not a terrorist. (set)
He have proof he is not a terrorist.
7. I think we've got the worst part of this work done. (broken)
I think work.
8. To clear up any misunderstanding, he wrote to the press to deny any involvement in the affair. (record)
To press to deny any involvement in the affair.
9. For the first couple of years in the business, we were happy just to cover our costs. (break)
We for the first couple of years in the business.
10. Women all over the world copied the Princess Diana look. (set)
Princess Diana the world copied.



UNIT 7

ADVERBS - COLLOCATION



Yes madam, don't worry.
Your new dog will be
Instantly recognisable
as a pedigree Dalmatian.

ALL AT SEA

This is my sixth day at sea. I **balance precariously** overboard looking for fish - I haven't eaten for three days. I **fully accept** that I may never see land again. It won't **matter greatly**, I tell myself. I have nothing to live for. Today is **partly cloudy**. Could this mean a few drops of precious rainwater? I **fervently hope** it will rain. It **invariably rains** in the tropics - why not now, for God's sake? Now I'm **thinking aloud**. Maybe this is the first sign of madness. I try to sleep but find it impossible. My thirst rages on but I **rigidly enforce** my rule of only two mouthfuls of water a day. I am **well-schooled** in survival. The day is **deathly still**. Suddenly I see a smudge on the horizon which becomes a ship, now **plainly visible**. I **stare wide-eyed**. I cannot believe it. I **signal wildly** and almost fall overboard in my excitement. I **resolutely oppose** the temptation to jump overboard and swim towards the approaching ship. I **cheer enthusiastically** as she draws nearer and nearer. Suddenly I see a face looking over the side, **instantly recognisable** as a British sea captain. I am saved.

A Match the verbs in bold type with the sets of adverbs.

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. oppose | <input type="text"/> | a. sincerely, very much |
| 2. accept | <input type="text"/> | b. resolutely, strongly, vehemently |
| 3. enforce | <input type="text"/> | c. blindly, readily |
| 4. hope | <input type="text"/> | d. strictly, stringently |

ADVERB COLLOCATIONS

- * **grossly** negligent, fat
- * **use, differ widely**
- * **deviate, turn sharply**
- * **actively** participate, involve
- * **incurably** optimistic, romantic
- * **hopelessly** outnumbered, lost

B ADJECTIVE & NOUN COLLOCATIONS (MATCH)

- | | | | | | |
|------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|--------------|
| I. 1. hot | <input type="text"/> | a. concern, rate | II. 1. practical | <input type="text"/> | a. circle |
| 2. helping | <input type="text"/> | b. satisfaction | 2. ample | <input type="text"/> | b. nature |
| 3. going | <input type="text"/> | c. seat, favourite | 3. vicious | <input type="text"/> | c. time |
| 4. close | <input type="text"/> | d. hand | 4. human | <input type="text"/> | d. awakening |
| 5. job | <input type="text"/> | e. race, shave, call | 5. rude | <input type="text"/> | e. tips |

C M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

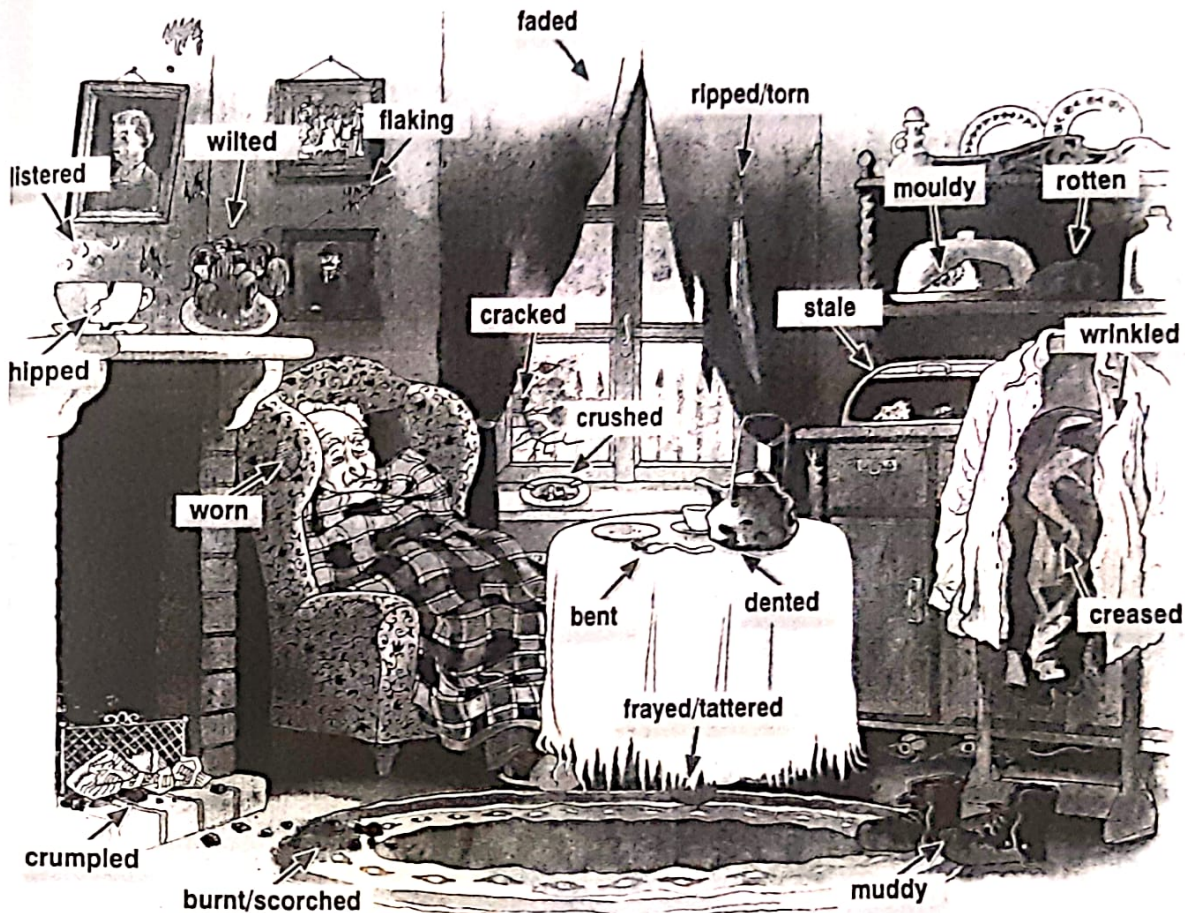
I tell you, one day he's going to get a (1)..... awakening, if he continues like this. This business has always been a (2)..... concern, but with him in charge it can't last much longer. He's not only (3)..... negligent, but he's a spendthrift and a waster. His father gave him enough (4)..... tips for him to become a huge success and make himself a fortune, and the whole family has always been willing to lend him a (5)..... hand. I (6)..... hope it isn't too late, that's all.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. a. practical | b. hot | c. rude | d. plain |
| 2. a. going | b. close | c. helping | d. fervent |
| 3. a. actively | b. blindly | c. sharply | d. grossly |
| 4. a. human | b. practical | c. active | d. going |
| 5. a. helping | b. hopeless | c. close | d. strict |
| 6. a. stringently | b. readily | c. sincerely | d. incurably |

RELATED WORDS

DESCRIBING THE CONDITION OF THINGS

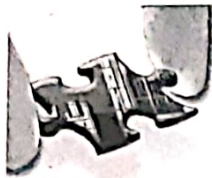
- › wear thin › wear and tear › be torn between › the worse for wear
- › bent double › crease (sb) up › feel rotten (about) › at the crack of dawn
- › crack a joke › blistering heat › bent on doing sth › have a chip on one's shoulder



M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

I thought it better that we set off at the (1)..... of dawn to avoid the (2)..... midday heat, which would be torture for the men. We had to walk at least 20 kilometres, a hard enough task under any conditions in the Arabian desert. Most of the group were the (3)..... for wear in any case, having been out here for weeks. I was (4)..... between calling the whole thing off or making one final push forward, but our Commander seemed (5)..... on us reaching the enemy-held town, whatever the cost. I have to admit I couldn't help feeling (6)..... about the whole mission.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. a. chip | b. top | c. crack | d. dent |
| 2. a. fraying | b. cracking | c. warping | d. blistering |
| 3. a. crushed | b. worse | c. rotten | d. bad |
| 4. a. torn | b. pulled | c. tempted | d. ripped |
| 5. a. torn | b. bent | c. dented | d. worn |
| 6. a. mouldy | b. frayed | c. rotten | d. crushed |



UNIT 7

EXPRESSING...

GOOD (AT)

- be a dab hand at/be handy with
- (not) be one's forte/strong point
- be out of this world ➤ be no match for
- measure up ➤ be the last word in
- have what it takes/be cut out (to be)
- be/come up to scratch/expectations

BAD (AT)

- make a pig's ear (out) of sth
- scrape the bottom of the barrel
- can't do sth to save one's life
- not be all it/one is cracked up to be
- good for nothing ➤ not be up to much
- be in one's bad books ➤ a dead loss

FORGET

- lose sight of (the fact that)
- live sth down ➤ slip one's mind
- put sth behind one
- take one's mind off
- have no recollection of
- let bygones be bygones
- put sth out of one's mind
- out of sight, out of mind
- have a memory like a sieve
- go in one ear and out the other

REMEMBER/ REMIN

- ring a bell ➤ bear in mind
- rack one's brains
- bring back memories
- cast one's mind back
- be/serve as a reminder
- jog/refresh sb's memory
- it's on the tip of my tongue
- have a vague/hazy recollection of

A GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

1. David gets teased a lot but he takes it all in part.
I thought his story of pay rises all round was too to be true.
Jack's for nothing, so why should I go on helping him?
2. Roger, can I have a with you before the meeting?
The Jaguar is the last in luxury motoring.
I've given my to keep her secret so I can't tell you anything.
3. Organising parties isn't my strong, I'm afraid.
There's really no in waiting any longer for the Smiths.
I see the you are making but I cannot agree with you.
4. Gran gave me a good for making better pastry.
We'll take the old cooker to the rubbish on Saturday.
His name was on the of my tongue a moment ago.
5. I don't think I can the sight of this terrible old carpet any longer.
I told you that chair wouldn't your weight, didn't I?
You must in mind what the doctor told you about overdoing things.
6. I had looked forward to the party but it was a loss after all.
There was silence for a moment after William told us the news.
I tried starting the car but the battery was because I'd left the lights on.

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. Julie forgets everything you tell her. (goes)
Whatever you the other.
2. That new restaurant has terrific food. (world)
The food restaurant.
3. Henry is really angry with Freddie again. (books)
Freddie again.
4. A good way to forget one's problems is to listen to music. (off)
Listening to music is one's problems.
5. That film isn't as good as people say, is it? (cracked)
That film isn't, is it?
6. Couldn't they find anyone better than Rosa to represent them? (barrel)
They must if Rosa's representing them.
7. I hardly remember the house where I lived as a child. (hazy)
I only have I lived as a child.
8. We must remember that the economy is in serious trouble. (lose)
We mustn't is in serious trouble.

USE OF ENGLISH

GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

SET A (based on PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING, VERB EXPRESSIONS, RELATED WORDS)

1. He's so ambitious that nothing of the manager's job will satisfy him.
Dad had to go to Scotland at notice so he missed my birthday.
We thought it would be a first class performance but it fell far of our expectations.
2. That grey horse is the favourite for the next race.
Serve the soup piping with crusty bread rolls.
You'll be in the seat at the press conference so I hope you've got plenty of answers.
3. Mr Potts was grey in the face and double with pain.
The key was into a strange shape and wouldn't turn in the lock.
Thomas was on getting his own way, so he slipped out of the back door when his mother wasn't looking.
4. My aunt Agatha always great store by good manners.
Once he his sights on something, he never let anything stand in his way.
The Ethiopians the pace in the marathon and nobody else had much of a chance.
5. The professor's research into heart disease fresh ground.
This year we even for the first time since starting the business.
We the back of the work by Friday and everything was ready by Monday morning.
6. I know him by although I don't actually know his name.
We thought it was a diamond at first but we were mistaken.
Enjoy the climb but never lose of the fact that the mountains are dangerous.

SET B (guided)

1. I'm going to give them a piece of my about the noise they made last night.
You don't look happy so tell me what's on your , Teresa.
Don't worry, Tony; no man understands the way a woman's works.
2. Helen's baby boy his first tooth yesterday.
Patrick felt a lot healthier after he down on alcohol.
Her excuses for not doing her assignment no ice with her teacher.
3. What more can one than a loving family and a comfortable life?
It's a lot to of anyone to work every weekend.
Do you think we should Leonard and his wife to the reception?
4. I can't hear myself in here with your loud music!
You should yourself lucky not to have been seriously injured in the crash.
His talk has given us all something to about, hasn't it?
5. You must back up your files every day as a of course.
In spite of your excuses, the fact of the is that you were too lazy to do it.
Let's deal with the in hand before we start making future plans.
6. John had a of luck at roulette and won a lot of money.
This plan may not work so we should give it a trial first.
Using taxis will prove expensive in the long so you should start thinking about buying a car.

• opinion
• head
• mind
• cut
• took
• made
• want
• need
• ask
• consider
• think
• talk
• case
• subject
• matter
• test
• run
• stroke



UNIT 7

TOPIC VOCABULARY & IDIOMS / EXPRESSIONS

ART

Art is the **medium** through which man expresses his **creative** and **aesthetic** feelings; it may be created with **words, sounds, colours, lines** or **forms**, and is understood through the **senses**. A **piano** is heard, a **poem** seen and heard, a **painting** is seen and **sculpture** may be felt as well as seen. Art is the expression of and comment on **ideas, emotions** or **experiences**. It may stimulate the mind, revealing new meaning in familiar things. It is man's **interpretation** of the **sights** and **sounds** that exist in the world, giving him a broader, deeper and more sensitive realisation of life.

Apart from being a thing of beauty, art may serve other ends: **cave paintings** and **ritual dances** of primitive times were a form of **magic**; **music, painting** and **architecture** have been used for the **glorification of religion**, while certain art forms have served as **propaganda** for the **state**.

There are many types and classifications of art. Painting, sculpture, architecture, and often poetry, drama and dance are classed as the **fine arts**, art that is primarily **concerned** with beauty or aesthetic qualities. Ceramics, pottery, tapestry, glassware and other arts that combine beauty with usefulness are called **applied, decorative** or **plastic arts**. Art forms concerned with **drawing** and **printing** such as **etchings, lithographs** and **woodcuts** are called the **graphic arts**. Art forms such as painting that appeal mainly to the eye are the **visual arts**, while music and dancing are the **performing arts**; **literary arts** include poetry, novels, essays and drama.

A work of art reflects the **political, economic** and **social conditions** of the period in which it is produced. It is generally created by one man and is related to his reactions to life. **Style** is the distinctive manner in which he expresses himself. When a common style is found in the works of many artists, style becomes identified with **national traits**, with periods of time or with groups of artists, and is sometimes called a **movement** or **school**.

IDIOMS - EXPRESSIONS

- **pretty as a picture**: very pretty indeed
- **get weaving**: begin sth/get busy doing sth
- **(deep) lines were etched in her face**: deep furrows of worry were on her face
- **blow one's own trumpet**: brag about sth one has done or can do
- **make a drama out of sth**: exaggerate the importance of sth which is, in fact, petty
- **get sth down to a fine art**: master sth (even lying) by doing it frequently
- **as still as a statue**: not moving a muscle, so still one might be mistaken for a statue
- **(don't) judge a book by its cover**: (don't) judge a person by the way he dresses, looks, etc
- **paint/tar sb with the same brush**: liken one person to another, blame sb for the errors of others

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. Her troubles were written clearly on her face. (*lines*)
Her face of worry.
2. When threatened, chameleons do not move a muscle. (*still*)
Chameleons when threatened.
3. I've filled in so many tax-forms I can do them in my sleep. (*down*)
I've got tax-forms , I've filled in so many.
4. Why do some people make such a great fuss of the simplest situation? (*make*)
Why do the simplest situation?
5. You shouldn't judge people by their appearance. (*look*)
Judging can often be misleading.
6. Just because his brother is a criminal doesn't mean Gareth is one, too. (*tar*)
You shouldn't as his brother.
7. We should make a move before dad gets home. (*weaving*)
We'd before dad gets here.
8. Yes, he's a good athlete, but must he brag about it all the time?
Yes, he's a good athlete but so much?



OPEN CLOZE TEST

THE FOURTH HAND

John Irving's new novel "The Fourth Hand" manages to be (10)..... *both* entertaining and unpleasant: you (1)..... the pages over faster and faster, partly because you're dying for (2)..... to end. The novel concerns an ordinary TV reporter (3)..... Patrick Wallingford, who deplores the ratings-driven news business but is unable to climb (4)..... of a rut doing sensational disaster reports for a second-rate 24-hour news network. Then, (5)..... if in punishment for his lack of moral courage, he becomes a disaster report himself. Circus lions eat his left hand on TV. (6)..... follows is a standard Irving story about destinies. The story, however, is ruined by the author's snide portrayal of the female (7)....., who are nearly all manipulative and bad tempered. They are all desperate to (8)..... a baby with Wallingford or to chop off something other (9)..... his hand. For instance, there's a dull Wisconsin widow who is clearly supposed to be the novel's heroine, even (10)..... she's plainly nuts. She donates the left hand of her late (11)..... to him on the (12)..... that she be allowed to visit it occasionally. Irving's novels are often crowded with people but here he's like an air-traffic controller with twenty planes (13)..... around in the air and no idea which one to land next. He spends (14)..... too much time discussing Wallingford's eccentric hand surgeon and the many women in his life. Irving has smart, if obvious, things to say about TV news but there was a time when he had (15)..... to say about people.

GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

1. Jane's uncle was active in the civil rights in the 1960s.
He signalled to me to approach with a of his hand.
Critics of the EU say there is too much free of people across borders.
2. And what sir, is your of business?
I don't mind our getting engaged, but I draw the at marriage.
Stephen comes from a long of musicians.
3. I saw a police car up outside the betting shop in the high street.
My guess is that the new exhibition will not many visitors.
It's getting dark so I'd better the curtains and put the lights on.
4. It's hard to tell the two sisters, they're so alike.
There was no one on the bus from the driver.
Why don't they try living if they can't live together?
5. The audience gave the conductor a big as he walked onto the stage.
I'm sure Helen had a in getting Martha fired - I can sense it.
This situation will get out of if we don't do something about it now.
6. Abortion is a very issue at the moment.
Orla has very skin and must be careful what food she eats.
Jason is more than he seems and can easily be hurt by a cruel remark.



ARCTIC WOLVES

Wolves are my favourite animals, and I have been studying them for the past two decades. Once you've lived around wolves for a while, you develop a sense for when something big is about to happen. I had spent a chilly night on an island in the Canadian Arctic, watching the wolves sleep under the midnight sun. I could hardly keep my eyes open any more. Then, when I was about to pack up and head back to camp, one of the females suddenly woke and began to howl. This stirred the rest of the pack, and within minutes they were all howling together. They were getting ready to hunt. This was the type of experience I was waiting for.

When I first started to follow wolves, my first task was to locate a den. For most of the year, a wolf pack roams over a territory that can cover thousands of square miles. Each spring, however, the mother must take to the den to have her pups. The rest of the pack remains nearby to help bring food to the youngsters after they are born. For those brief months you have the opportunity to watch the wolves at close range. Finding a den is relatively easy as the wolves' movements are not difficult to track on such a barren landscape. The difficult part was waiting to see if the wolves would object to our presence, or if they would be disturbed and move their cubs to another location. I didn't have to wait long for our answer. All seven adults looked at me briefly, stretched, howled a few times at the sky, and then took off on a hunt. I couldn't believe it; they had left their precious offspring totally unguarded with me in full view. At last I had found the perfect place to study and photograph them, and experience how they adapt to the Arctic environment. Even during the Arctic winter, when the sun doesn't appear for four months, and temperatures can plummet to minus 57 degrees C, the wolves sleep outside, curling into tight balls with their bushy tails over their noses as makeshift breathing masks.

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|--|
| 1. howl | <input type="text"/> | a. near |
| 2. den | <input type="text"/> | b. drop quickly |
| 3. roams | <input type="text"/> | c. long, loud sad cry |
| 4. at close range | <input type="text"/> | d. temporary |
| 5. barren | <input type="text"/> | e. home of some types of wild animal |
| 6. offspring | <input type="text"/> | f. travels round area without definite direction |
| 7. plummet | <input type="text"/> | g. child, young one |
| 8. makeshift | <input type="text"/> | h. not good enough for plants to grow on |

B Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. The writer mentions "those brief months" (line 11). What is special about those months?

.....

2. What couldn't the writer believe (line 16), and what did the writer expect?

.....





NATURAL DISHARMONY









I followed several wolves to the beach, where they found a fish washed up on the shore. It was a large Arctic char, and it smelled rank. Yet the wolves lay down on it and began rolling around until they were all steeped in the stench. It seemed bizarre. Not until they took off on a hunt shortly after did it begin to make sense. They were masking their own scent with something their prey had no fear of. On some primal level of consciousness, no doubt, some hapless musk ox might have reassured itself by thinking – it's only a dead fish stalking me!

Often I watched the whole pack, including the cubs, join ranks in community singing. Each had a distinctive voice and a favourite range of notes. A wolf seems to hate hitting the same note as a packmate, and when this happened by accident, the pack shuffled about frantically until discord once more reigned. The reason for this contempt of harmony may be rooted in evolution. By varying their tones, a pack can project the impression of greater size. Adjacent packs presumably will think twice before violating another pack's territory, dissuaded by the rank on rank of phantoms echoing in the night. At other times, the wolves seem to howl for pleasure.

As time passed, I began to venerate even more the Arctic wolves and their ways; I was impressed at how every adult co-operated to rear the cubs; how they worked together as a hunting unit, and perhaps most of all, how they constantly seemed to reassure one another with tail-wagging, nose-touching and howling.

Wolves are noble animals who have been given a reputation for savagery that they don't deserve, and there is a mystery in them that we will never fully understand.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|-------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. steeped in |  | a. give, present |
| 2. stench |  | b. having origin in |
| 3. masking |  | c. bring up |
| 4. stalking |  | d. covered with |
| 5. shuffled about |  | e. awful smell |
| 6. rooted in |  | f. following with intent to harm |
| 7. project |  | g. hiding |
| 8. rear |  | h. moved around |

Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. According to the writer, what advantage did the wolves gain by rolling in the dead fish?
.....
2. How does the writer illustrate the fact that the wolves are a closely-knit unit?
.....
3. In a paragraph of between 50 and 70 words, summarise in your own words, as far as possible, the writers' attitude towards the Arctic wolves.



You are going to read an extract from a newspaper article. Seven paragraphs have been removed from the extract. Choose from the paragraphs A-H the one which fits each gap (1-7). There is one extra paragraph which you do not need to use.

ABORIGINAL ART

I had been admiring the works of French Post-Impressionists Gauguin and Bonnard at the Art Gallery of New South Wales in Sydney, when I wandered away from the main exhibit - and into another world.

I found myself in front of a slab of bark, tall as a man. On it was painted a serpent, with the head of a crocodile, its eyes glaring malevolently like the embers of a dying fire. The image radiated a raw strength, quite different from the gilt-framed European paintings down the hall.

1

However, just as this art gains international recognition - galleries like noted dealer Rebecca Hossack's in London are drawing enthusiastic visitors - its time-honoured traditions are in danger of disappearing. "It's mostly just the old men who paint on bark in the true way," says Rebecca. "Men like 60-year-old Thompson Yulidjirri, one of the finest bark painters alive. Their old ways could soon be lost for ever."

2

At the end of the red, dusty runway, a slight, white-bearded man greets me after we land. He wears only a broad smile and skimpy shorts; ceremonial scars circle his ebony chest. "Welcome," he says. "I am Yulidjirri."

Though Australian law forbids entry into Arnhem Land to anyone not invited by the inhabitants, Thompson Yulidjirri has permitted me to be among the few outsiders to see him create a bark from scratch. I must be patient, and wait for the following day.

3

"Why not take the bark from one of these trees?" I ask as we pass a grove of woollybutt eucalyptus.

"The Creators said that it can only be taken from the stringy bark," he explains. Aborigines believe that when the Creator Spirits roamed Arnhem Land at the beginning of time, they set a strict code of behaviour. Known by most Australians as the Dreamtime, it's called Djang, or The Law, by tribesmen, and its commandments are as rigid as biblical dictates.

4

At last he stops at a perfectly straight stringy bark, cuts into the trunk and feels the oozing sap with his fingers. "This one," he murmurs.

Yulidjirri cuts out a six-foot by three-foot section, then tears away the inch-thick covering as if peeling an orange. "That was the easiest part," he says. "The rest of it takes weeks."

Back at his home, Yulidjirri sits on the grass outside, trimming the edges with his curved bush knife. For the rest of the afternoon, he patiently planes the moist yellow inside of the bark.

5

The next day we wade across a creek, then battle up a slope to a sacred cave. When my eyes grow accustomed to the gloom, the hair rises on the back of my neck. On the back wall, wrapped in paper bark and pushed into a recess, is a skull, stark-white in the gloom. "It's the burial place of ancestors," Yulidjirri says.

The themes of his paintings have powerful spiritual significance: his pictures represent tales of the Creator heroes, from the beginning of time, handed down through his ancestors' paintings. Yulidjirri has come to the cave for inspiration.

6

Meanwhile the bark has dried and is now bone-hard. Yulidjirri can begin painting. First, to make the brush, he deftly cuts off a piece of discarded bark the size of his hand, then chops energetically at one edge to fray it like the bristles of a brush. Like all Kunwinjku painters, Yulidjirri uses four natural pigments - red and yellow ochre, white clay and charcoal. He then grinds a chunk of red ochre on a flat rock, mixing the small pile of dust with water and a fixing agent. He colours the entire bark with swift strokes of red, which represent blood, the painter's life source.

7

By nightfall a black crocodile more than three feet long has come alive on the bark. A goanna lizard perches above its head. Floating round it are canoes and water birds. It depicts an important Creation myth that Yulidjirri inherited from his ancestors.

"No one can paint this story without my permission," he says. "When I was a child, if a man painted someone else's story, he'd be killed." He paints more than 15 stories about Creation and has the right to paint many plants and animals.

A

Two thousand feet above the forests of Arnhem Land, where a few hundred Aborigines of the Kunwinjku tribe inhabit thousands of square miles of wilderness, our six-seater Cessna approaches Mamadawerre, a tiny settlement some 190 miles east of Darwin. A landscape of sandstone hills and lush, forested valley stretches below.

B

Yulidjirri sketches the basic shape of the crocodile with the jet-black paint. Hours pass and the sun beats down pitilessly, but the painter is lost in concentration, sometimes putting aside the brush to visualise the composition.

C

Finally he rubs the surface vigorously with fig leaves; their prickly texture is as effective as fine sandpaper. As the sun drops below the jungle line, Yulidjirri places four stones at the bark's corners to ensure it stays flat when it dries.

D

The tale is about two brothers who want to cross the ocean to an island but arrive to find others have taken their canoes. Angry, they dive into the water and overturn them. The men paddling the canoes emerge as the first water birds, while the brothers transform themselves into the first salt-water crocodile and goanna.

E

On a boulder near the entrance is a 12-foot-long picture of a salt-water crocodile - a much-used motif in Aboriginal art. It's painted in the X-ray style unique to western Arnhem Land.

Clearly visible are the monster's heart, liver, stomach and spine. Yulidjirri sits cross-legged, closes his eyes and murmurs the words of a Kunwinjku song. Eventually he stirs and says, "I'll paint a Kinga like the one on the rock."

F

That night, as I lie on a bunk, I listen to the monsoonal rain drumming on the roof. I'm woken at sunrise by the cackle of kookaburras in a gum tree outside my window. "We'll fetch the bark now, while it's cool," Yulidjirri says. Smoke rises from an outdoor fireplace as we head out of the settlement and into the monsoon forest. The air is so laden with moisture it seems to sweat.

G

Australian Aborigines began to make these extraordinary paintings thousands of years ago. The art is still created today in the remotest reaches of Arnhem Land in northern Australia. "They have a startling, powerful quality," says Edmund Capon, the gallery's director. "It's as if they've come from the dawn of time."

H

After three hours we are among giant stringy bark trees that obscure the sun, creating a cathedral-like gloom. "I've been coming here since my father showed me this place as a child," Yulidjirri says. "My ancestors have been coming here for thousands of years." Yulidjirri peers at each tree. "That's no good," he says. "Termites." Another is studded with knots as thick as a fist. Again he shakes his head.



UNIT 8

REPORTED SPEECH

My mother always complained that the moment she managed to make ends meet, somebody moved the ends.

Pansy Penner

INTRODUCTORY VERBS

A QUESTIONS

asked, inquired, offered, wanted to know, wondered (what, where, how...)

- "Is there anything in the fridge? I'm hungry," he said.
→ **He wanted to know** if there was anything in the fridge because he was hungry.
- "Can I give you a hand?" he said. → **He offered** to help me.
- "What shall I do?" she said. → **She wondered** what she should do/to do.

B COMMANDS/REQUESTS/ADVICE/THREATS

ask, warn, demand, encourage, invite, promise, refuse...

- Forget your rifle again and I'll put you on a charge, private!" the sergeant barked.
- **The sergeant threatened** to put the private on a charge if he forgot his rifle again.

C INFINITIVE/CLAUSE

- **agree, claim, demand, vow, offer to...**
 - **advise, allow, ask, beg, remind sb to...**
 - **add, agree, complain, recommend, remark, boast that clauses**
- ▶
- "I'm on first-name terms with the mayor," Victor said.
 - **Victor claimed to be** on first-name terms with the mayor.
 - "It's late; we should leave," he said.
 - **He remarked that** it was late and **recommended that** we let

D GERUND

- a) **admit, advise, deny, regret, propose, recommend, suggest...**
 - "Why don't we all take a break?" Sid said. → **Sid suggested (our) taking** a break.
- b) **apologise for, decide on, disapprove of, insist on, persist in, object to, specialise in...**
 - "I shall speak to no one but the manager!" she cried. → **She insisted on speaking** to no one but the manager.
- c) **accuse sb of, compliment sb on, excuse sb for/from, blame/criticise/forgive/reprimand sb for...**
 - "Jenkins, you are not working hard enough," the headmaster said.
 - **The headmaster reprimanded Jenkins for not working** hard enough.

E NO CHANGES IN VERB TENSE

- **reporting in the present**
 - **2nd & 3rd conditionals**
 - **subjunctives**
 - **past tense in time clauses**
 - **general truths/facts**
- ▶
- **John says** in his letter that he **has found** a new job.
 - She **told** me that if she **had** the money, she **would buy** it.
 - Steve **told** us that he'd **rather live** in a small town.
 - Reg **said** that he **lost** his keys **while he was running** for the bus.
 - Our teacher **told** us that **tigers come** from Asia.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. They said that the two boys had started the fire. **The two boys were accused...**
2. The phone company threatened to cut us off unless we paid the bill immediately. **The phone company said...**
3. "Have the invoices been sent?" she asked. **She wanted...**
4. "This is the last time I set foot in this place!" he said. **He vowed...**
5. "I'm not sure, Sue, but I may visit them next week if I can find the time," Orla said. **Orla told...**
6. "What a lovely house you have, Jill," said Elaine. **Elaine complimented...**
7. "Don't touch this wire; it's live," the electrician said. **The electrician warned...**
8. "Don't forget that we are to be at the Browns at eight this evening," she said to Tom. **She reminded...**





A SUGGESTIONS → Let's, Shall, Why (not)...

- "Shall we hire a car?"
- "What if we hire/hired a car?"
- "Why not/Why don't we hire a car?"
- "What do you say to (our) hiring a car?"
- "Let's hire a car." → "What's wrong with (our) hiring a car?"
- "What/How about hiring a car?"
- He suggested (their) hiring a car/(that) they (should) hire/(that) they hired a car.

B (DIS)APPROVAL/(DIS)SATISFACTION

- "This is good work."
- "I can't thank you enough for your help."
- "I'm sorry but I can't stay."
- "Ouch! That needle hurts!"
- "My purse is here. Oh, thank goodness!"
- "Wow! What a fantastic hotel!"
- He expressed his approval of my work.
- She expressed her (deep) gratitude for his help.
- She expressed her regret at not being able to stay.
- He gave a cry of pain when he was given an injection.
- She gave a sigh of relief on finding her purse.
- He gave an exclamation of delight when he saw the hotel.
- "I'm afraid I expected your report to be better."
- He expressed his dissatisfaction/disappointment with her report.
- Her report did not meet with his satisfaction.
- Her report did not come/live up to/fell short of his expectations.

C OBLIGATION/DEDUCTION/ASSUMPTION

- "Someone must know." (assumption)
- "You must be here by ten." (obligation)
- "They must not be allowed in." (prohibition)
- He said that someone must know.
- They said that we must/had to/were to be there by ten.
- He said that they must not/were not to/could not be allowed in.

D SHALL/LET'S

- "We shall be leaving early." (future)
- "Shall I post it to you?" (request for advice)
- "Shall I give you a hand?" (offer)
- "Shall we have a party?" (suggestion)
- "Let Fred do it; it's his job." (obligation)
- "Let him go!" (command)
- He said that they would be leaving early.
- She asked/wondered if she should/was to post it to them.
- Mary offered to give us a hand.
- Emma suggested (their) having a party.
- He said Fred had to/should/was to do it as it was his job.
- He said that we had to/were to/should let him go.

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

- "There's no way I'll agree." → She flatly refused to agree.
- There is a rumour that/There is talk of... → Rumour has it that/It is rumoured that/to be...
- She desperately wanted to know who had phoned. → Her curiosity was aroused by the phone call.
- "What would you do if you were me?" → She asked for my advice.
- "I can't make head or tail of this message." → He was at a loss to understand the message.
- "Feed the cats and water the plants." → Pam's instructions/orders were to feed the cats and water the plants.
- "I'm not sure it would be wise to tell the police." → He questioned the advisability of telling the police.
- He spoke so that we wouldn't hear him. → He said/whispered/muttered something under his breath.
- "You can hardly expect me to do that." → He said that what I was asking her to do was unreasonable.
- "Plead guilty." → His advice was to plead guilty. • "No comment." → He refused to comment.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. Rita's teacher said that she was not satisfied with her essay. *Rita's essay did...*
2. "Yes! We've won!" he shouted in joy. *He gave...*
3. "Whatever happens, keep your head," her father told her. *Her father's...*
4. "If only I had been able to meet Lisa's mother," he said. *He expressed...*
5. Trevor suggested that we should throw a surprise party for Annabel. *"What do..."*
6. "I'm truly sorry about not being able to attend the wedding," Carla said. *Carla expressed...*
7. "Put the cat out and don't let him in till the morning," dad said. *Dad's...*
8. "I am afraid that I cannot approve of such an obvious attempt at deceit," said Owen. *Owen expressed...*
9. "I think your decision not to sell the house just yet is wise, Joan," Frank said. *Frank agreed with...*
10. "Why don't you plant hybrid tea roses around the front lawn, Diane?" said her aunt. *Diane's aunt...*



A "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. "Nothing will persuade me to sleep in that haunted house," she said. (*flatly*)
She house.
2. "Yes, I did see the accused going into the cinema," said the witness. (*seen*)
The witness into the cinema.
3. "You don't appreciate me, Gerry," she complained. (*took*)
She granted.
4. "They say he's left his wife," Susannah said to me. (*rumour*)
Susannah said that left his wife.
5. "Are you being served?" the shop assistant asked. (*know*)
The shop assistant served.
6. "You should have waited for us," the team leader said to John. (*criticised*)
The team leader for them.
7. "You can't have your supper until you've washed your hands," said Martha's mother. (*to*)
Martha's mother she had washed her hands.
8. "I've never seen such awful living conditions as in this country," said the inspector. (*horror*)
The inspector in that country.
9. "I'm afraid your performance was not up to par, Sophie," he complained. (*fell*)
He complained that expectations.
10. "I'm not sure we should raise our prices right now," the sales manager said. (*advisability*)
The sales manager at that time.

B DERIVATIVES

JAKE'S PREDICAMENT

It was difficult not to (0)..... *sympathise* with Jake in his predicament,
even though we had (1)..... so much about things in the past.
I had always questioned the (2)..... of his decision to marry Carla.
Since the marriage, his family had (3)..... their attitude against him
and he had shown (4)..... courage in the face of this hostility.
He had told me in all (5)..... that he had nothing to live for.
No matter how (6)..... he had behaved in the past, he felt he didn't
deserve this, which only served to (7)..... his sadness and despair.
This (8)..... by the very people he had always counted on was a
severe blow, and the (9)..... of losing all contact with them was too
much for him to bear. It was a (10)..... time for him indeed.

SYMPATHY
DIFFERENT
WISE
HARD
ADMIRE
CONFIDE
FOOL
DEEP
REJECT
THINK
STRESS



A GUIDED CLOZE TEST: FILL IN

COSMETICS

Both women and men, it seems, have always had a (0) *fascination* for changing their appearance (1)..... the aid of paints, powders, dyes and other (2)..... devices. The use of cosmetics, (3)..... from being a product of civilisation, originates from an inherent human (4)..... for self-decoration. As far (5)..... as 100,000 years ago, (6)..... is believed to have painted his body, and at a later period the people of the Stone (7)..... probably decorated themselves in a similar fashion. However, the original motivation (8)..... prehistoric man's use of paint was different from (9)..... which inspired civilised cultures to adopt cosmetics (10)..... a way of enhancing or creating beauty.

Prehistoric man must have been conscious that he was a weak animal struggling against a hostile environment. He had to (11)..... his own tools for hunting because Nature had not provided him (12)..... sharp teeth or claws or the overwhelming physical strength of the wild beasts which roamed the ancient world. He decorated his skin with the markings of the most powerful animals because he believed that by representing their physical characteristics on his own body he acquired some of their power. But his fear (13)..... wild beasts remained as (14)..... constantly disturbing and inexplicable phenomenon, and inspired (15)..... primitive man the belief that mysterious forces which he was able neither to understand nor control were at work around him.

- | | | |
|--|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 0. marvel / fascination / wonder / fantasy | 6. human / man / one / world | 11. develop / use / adopt / acquire |
| 1. in / to / with / through | 7. Age / Epoch / Era / Period | 12. for / in / with / through |
| 2. false / imitation / mock / artificial | 8. to / in / at / for | 13. for / of / against / from |
| 3. long / far / wide / away | 9. that / which / what / such | 14. ever / a / the / if |
| 4. want / enjoyment / desire / tendency | 10. for / to / as / like | 15. in / for / on / to |
| 5. ago / long / back / old | | |

B Fill each of the numbered blanks in the passage with one suitable word.

LIVING IN SPACE

We are living at a critical point in our history. Once (0) *upon* a time primitive people feared storms and the night, and lived by superstitions. Then science rationalised things and created order, and brought us to the point (1)..... we could invent theories of creation and test them in the laboratory. We began to feel omnipotent. We were aware that (2)..... were man-made threats which could wipe us off the (3)..... of the Earth. But the Universe would go on for (4)..... Now we are not (5)..... sure. We are becoming increasingly aware of our vulnerability, and so far have done very (6)..... about it. With planning we (7)....., one day, escape the Earth and colonise space. After (8)....., transatlantic flight is commonplace today but would have been (9)..... a dream in Columbus' time, five hundred years ago. More than a (10)..... scientists believe that mankind's arrival is so improbable that it is as if Nature conspired to bring it (11)..... They see hints that the Universe created life to be its agents for immortality. As (12)..... as we know, we are the ones who have to carry out the task. (13)..... we can avoid extinction in the short term, then we may propagate throughout space into the indefinite future. You and I have no (14)..... to life; we inherited it by chance. Now that we are here, we have the duty to (15)..... our part in the great human relay race.



UNIT 8

PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING

LUCKY ESCAPE



To this day I can't believe my luck. I was **concentrating on** getting home quickly from work and I was a bit **behind schedule** so I was driving slightly faster than usual. Now, I'm not **in the habit of** speeding, and I certainly wasn't **under the influence of** alcohol, but suddenly I **lost control of** the car. I suspect someone had **tampered with** my brakes, as **without exception**, I have my car serviced every three months. I put her **in** a lower gear, but **to no effect**. **In an effort to** slow her down I ran into the side of the road

where I hit three cars **in quick succession** and then **collided with** a milk van at the bottom of the hill. The driver jumped out and **accused me of** being drunk but he soon saw that I wasn't. I was a nervous wreck - **by rights** I should have been dead, but I walked away from the wreckage **without a scratch**. Of course, when I got home my wife was **beside herself** with worry.

A FILL IN with the appropriate prepositions.

- | | | | | | |
|------------------|---|---------------|-------------------|---|-----------------------|
| • check | ⇒ | control | • tell | ⇒ | give an account |
| • full | ⇒ | packed | • the cards | ⇒ | the offing |
| • doubt | ⇒ | sure | • delay | ⇒ | the double |
| • progress | ⇒ | way | • sorts | ⇒ | the weather |

REPHRASING

- **persuade** ⇒ talk sb into/out of ⇒ get sb to ⇒ get round sb ⇒ bring/talk sb round ⇒ lean on ⇒ put pressure on/bring pressure to bear on ⇒ twist sb's arm
- **say** ⇒ point out ⇒ put it ⇒ word it ⇒ make a comment/observation/remark ⇒ drop a hint ⇒ come out with ⇒ blurt out
- **promise** ⇒ pledge/swear/vow/undertake ⇒ give one's word ⇒ give an undertaking/an assurance/a guarantee
- **realise** ⇒ occur to ⇒ dawn on ⇒ sink in ⇒ become aware of/that ⇒ wake up to the fact that
- **disapprove of** ⇒ have a low opinion of ⇒ frown on ⇒ take a dim view of ⇒ not hold with ⇒ (not) go along with ⇒ think badly of

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- Many people do not approve of the new measures to control crime. (*along*)
Few to control crime.
- I can't believe he said that to her face. (*came*)
I can't her face.
- He told us an amusing story about his trip to Finland. (*account*)
He to Finland.
- Plans are in progress for a new children's hospital. (*way*)
Plans children's hospital.
- It's time you realised that he has no intention of paying that money back. (*woke*)
It's time you no intention of paying that money back.
- The dressmaker promised Anna that her dress would be ready on time. (*word*)
The dressmaker her dress would be ready on time.
- Residents are trying to persuade the company to relocate the factory. (*bear*)
Residents are trying to to relocate the factory.
- Many countries have yet to promise to abolish the use of landmines. (*undertaking*)
Many countries have yet of landmines.

KEEP - PICK EXPRESSIONS

- ◇ **keep oneself to oneself**: have little social contact; prefer one's own company
 • You can ask her to the party but I doubt that she'll come - she likes to **keep herself to herself**
- ◇ **keep up appearances**: make a good impression by hiding sth from others
 • He lost all his fortune gambling, but to **keep up appearances** he still drives around in his Jaguar.
- ◇ **keep your head**: not panic • **Keep your head** at the interview and I'm sure they'll take you on.
- ◇ **keep an eye on**: watch carefully; control
 • Look at this bank statement - we'll have to try and **keep an eye on** our spending this month.
- ◇ **keep sth/sb at bay**: prevent sth/sb from reaching/attacking/affecting one • Vitamin C **keeps** colds at bay
- ◇ **keep sb in suspense**: delay telling sb what they eagerly want to know
 • Dad is not telling us where we are going for our holidays; he wants to **keep us in suspense**.
- ◇ **keep pace with**: go/work as fast as sb else; advance at an equal rate
 • He is new to the job and is finding it extremely difficult to **keep pace with** his co-workers.
- ◇ **keep in touch (with sb)**: stay in contact (with sb)
 • If you get e-mail when you go to the States, it will be so much easier for us to **keep in touch**.
- ◇ **keep one's spirits/strength/morale/chin up**: remain cheerful/strong/confident
 • The battle-weary soldiers were finding it difficult to **keep their spirits up**.



I'm keeping an eye on you in case that young man is still hanging around.

- ◇ **pick up the pieces**: get back to normal after a (personal) disaster
 • Sarah took a long time to **pick up the pieces** after her father's death.
- ◇ **pick sb's pocket**: steal sth from sb's pocket
 • My wallet's missing; someone must have **picked my pocket** on the crowded train.
- ◇ **have a bone to pick with sb**: have a reason to complain
 • I've got a **bone to pick with you**. Who said you could use my tennis racket?
- ◇ **pick sb's brains**: ask sb for help/advice because they know more about the subject
 • Fred is an expert on electronics - why don't you **pick his brains**?
- ◇ **pick one's way through/across**: walk through/across very carefully
 • We **picked our way through** the long grass, hoping not to come across a snake.
- ◇ **pick a fight/quarrel**: deliberately start a fight/quarrel
 • It's your own fault you've got a black eye; you shouldn't **pick fights** with people bigger than you.
- ◇ **pick holes in**: criticise; find fault with • I think the plan is a good one so why are you **picking holes in it**?
- ◇ **pick sb/sth to pieces**: criticise severely • I enjoyed the film, even though the critics **picked it to pieces**.
- ◇ **pick up speed**: increase speed • The train **picked up speed** once it was out of the city limits.

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. Pam always maintains her composure in any crisis. (**keeps**)
 Pam in any crisis.
2. The book is slow in the beginning but the action gets faster after a while. (**picks**)
 The book is slow in the beginning while.
3. "Why do you criticise everything I do?" he said. (**holes**)
 He wanted to he did.
4. "It is very difficult to stay up-to-date with technology," she complained. (**pace**)
 She complained with technology.
5. "We have a number of suspects under surveillance," said the detective. (**keeping**)
 The detective said they suspects.
6. Readjusting one's life after a personal tragedy can be a very slow process. (**pieces**)
 Picking be a very slow process.
7. "Staying cheerful in times of trouble is not something everyone can do," Val said. (**spirits**)
 Val said that is not something everyone can do.
8. It's a thriller that has you riveted all the way through. (**suspense**)
 It's a thriller through.
9. I'm not happy with you - have you been telling lies about me? (**pick**)
 I - have you been telling lies about me?
10. "William is a very private person," remarked Amanda. (**kept**)
 Amanda remarked himself.



UNIT 8

ADVERBS - COLLOCATIONS

DAWN ATTACK



It's becoming increasingly apparent that your training methods just don't work, Albert.

So men, unless otherwise indicated, we attack at dawn on the 14th. All I can say is you've been **thoroughly vetted**, and you're the best in the world. Now, unfortunately our targets are **widely scattered**, but you lads, more than anyone else, are **eminently qualified** for the job at hand. Last week this attack was **unavoidably delayed** because of a sandstorm, but now we've got the green light. I'm **perfectly satisfied** that we are **thoroughly prepared** and I **firmly believe** we can pull this off without anyone getting **fatally wounded**. Now, the first gun emplacement is **easily accessible** and Jones here is **intimately acquainted** with this area so you'll be **well-advised** to stick closely behind him. It's becoming **increasingly apparent** that the enemy is running short of supplies, which can only help us. I **absolutely insist** on secrecy - this mission is **strictly confidential**, of course - I don't have to tell you that. If by chance you're captured, you've got your false Lebanese papers and you can **all converse fluently** in Arabic - the rest is up to you.

A Match the words in bold type with the sets of adverbs.

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|---|
| 1. believe | <input type="text"/> | a. completely, greatly, thoroughly |
| 2. wounded | <input type="text"/> | b. definitely, positively, stubbornly |
| 3. satisfied | <input type="text"/> | c. sincerely, strongly, mistakenly |
| 3. insist | <input type="text"/> | c. fatally, mortally, lightly, slightly |

ADVERB COLLOCATIONS

- **boldly** assert
- **fully** realise, clad
- **pleasantly** plump, surprised
- **spotlessly** clean
- **eagerly** await, devour
- **tightly** knit, packed

B ADJECTIVE & NOUN COLLOCATIONS

- | | | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|-------------|---------------|----------------------|--------------|
| I. 1. conscientious | <input type="text"/> | a. rich | II. 1. thorny | <input type="text"/> | a. grace |
| 2. brute | <input type="text"/> | b. decision | 2. takeover | <input type="text"/> | b. staff |
| 3. snap | <input type="text"/> | c. objector | 3. saving | <input type="text"/> | c. statement |
| 4. filthy | <input type="text"/> | d. force | 4. skeleton | <input type="text"/> | d. thinking |
| 5. laborious | <input type="text"/> | e. power | 5. sweeping | <input type="text"/> | e. problem |
| 6. spending | <input type="text"/> | f. task | 6. wishful | <input type="text"/> | f. bid |

C M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

I suppose it was a (1)..... decision really, finding a new job. I didn't spend much time thinking about it, anyway. I had a bad premonition about the imminent takeover (2)..... for our company, and had convinced myself that I would be soon out of a job anyway. I was part of a (3)..... staff keeping the factory going, but it would have been (4)..... thinking to imagine that the factory could ever be as big or successful as before. I really don't think the workers (5)..... realise how close they are to losing their livelihood and how touch and go the situation is. The only (6)..... grace I can think of is that they will be obliged to pay us off with a considerable sum of money in compensation.

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. a. brute | b. wishful | c. snap | d. laborious |
| 2. a. force | b. task | c. power | d. bid |
| 3. a. skeleton | b. takeover | c. sweeping | d. laborious |
| 4. a. eager | b. wishful | c. sweeping | d. stubborn |
| 5. a. fully | b. eagerly | c. strictly | d. easily |
| 6. a. thorny | b. conscientious | c. saving | d. wishful |

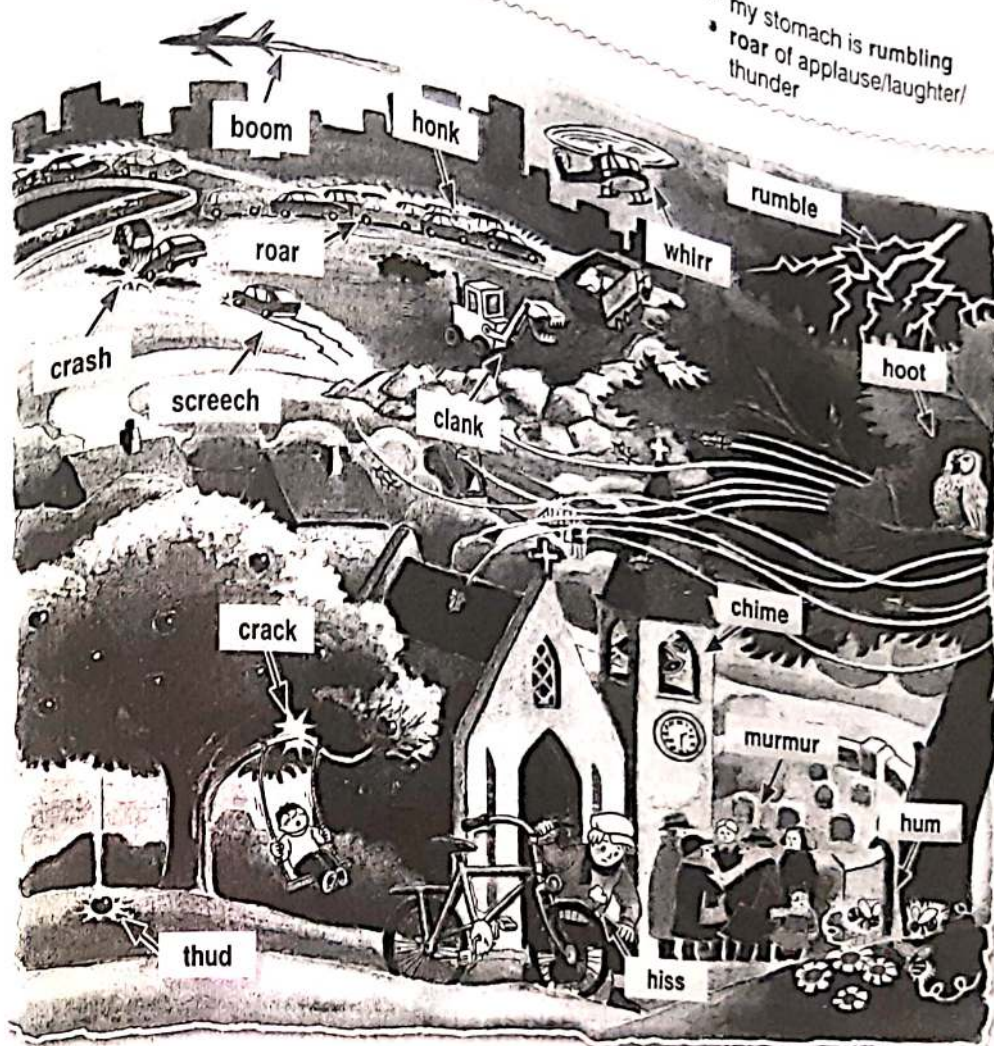
RELATED WORDS

SOUNDS

- a booming economy
- business is booming
- hum of conversation

- screech to a halt/stop/standstill
- don't care/give a hoot/two hoots

- my stomach is rumbling
- roar of applause/laughter/thunder



M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

I'd been at the party for nearly two hours, and there was no sign of food, so my stomach was (1)..... Most of the people there were boring business types talking about how their business was (2)..... and how the economy of such and such a country was not booming enough for them to make a fortune, you know the type of stuff. Quite frankly, I didn't give two (3)..... whether they made a fortune or died of starvation, I was so bored. Then suddenly a car (4)..... to a halt outside and this crazy man dressed like a clown ran into the room and started throwing water over everyone. It was the funniest thing I've ever seen. The (5)..... of conversation turned into a (6)..... of laughter. Tears were rolling down my cheeks I was laughing so much. Suddenly the party was saved!

1. a. thundering
2. a. booming
3. a. clanks
4. a. thudded
5. a. hiss
6. a. roar

- b. booming
- b. humming
- b. hoots
- b. roared
- b. chime
- b. rumble

- c. screeching
- c. rumbling
- c. hums
- c. screeched
- c. boom
- c. chime

- d. rumbling
- d. cracking
- d. hisses
- d. clanked
- d. hum
- d. crash



UNIT 8

EXPRESSING...

(IN)EXPERIENCE

- be new to
- old hand/pro
- know the ropes
- go/live through
- lack of experience
- have been around
- know sth inside out
- know one's onions/stuff
- know hardship/joy/sorrow
- be green/wet behind the ears
- do it/sth with one's eyes closed

DISCUSSION

- talk shop
- kick sth around
- be on the agenda
- have it out with sb
- thrash/hammer out
- be under discussion
- put your heads together
- be the subject of (much) debate
- be open to discussion/negotiation



By the looks of it, Ernest and Ingrid are only half serious about getting married. What do you mean, half serious? Ingrid is. Ernest isn't.

IMPRESSIONS

- be apparent
- it looks as if
- come across as
- judging by/from
- by the looks of it
- show (no) signs of
- to/by all appearances
- on the surface/face of it
- have all the hallmarks of
- have an air/a semblance of
- be under the impression that
- create/have/make/give an impression

A GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

- Our terms are laid down in the contract and are not to negotiation. I think I'll keep a(n) mind until I've heard all the evidence. After the storm, the roof of the house is to the elements.
- The doctor said I needed a change of so I'm going to the mountains for a week. Our plans are still in the but I'll be able to let you know definitely by next Friday. She had a(n) of such melancholy that she was rather a depressing dinner guest.
- John's success only goes to that there's no substitute for hard work. My grandparents worked hard all their lives and yet had nothing to for it at the end. He seemed to no signs of regret or remorse for what he had done.
- We were at a standstill until David up with the idea of putting sand in the paint. The plan for a new road up against so much opposition that it had to be dropped. The new assistant across as clever simply because she used everyone else's ideas.
- I sometimes play snooker at the club just to keep my in. Uncle Tom's an old at house repairs so why don't you ask his advice? I wanted some time to think about it but they forced my by saying I had to decide by Monday.
- You need your examined if you think dad will let you go alone. Let's put our together and see if we can work something out. I think will roll in the marketing department when they realise how low our profits will be this y

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- We are scheduled to discuss that matter at the next meeting. (on)
That matter the next meeting.
- The police think the robbery was an inside job. (hallmarks)
The robbery , according to the police.
- Debbie is the only one who knows everything there is to know in this office. (ropes)
The only one in is Debbie.
- The least we can do is talk about his ideas for a while before we decide. (around)
The least we can do before we decide.
- Apparently we'll have to start from scratch. (of)
By start from scratch.
- A lot of people have been talking about his new film lately. (much)
His new film lately.
- At first sight, it seems like a worthwhile plan of attack, but we'll see. (face)
On a worthwhile plan of attack, but we'll see.
- If you're so angry with Kathy, why don't you settle the matter with her? (have)
If you're so angry with Kathy, with her?

USE OF ENGLISH



GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

• Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

SET A (based on PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING, KEEP • PICK EXPRESSIONS, EXPRESSING...)

1. It's about time you it out with Trevor about the dirty trick he played on you.
The police said the fire all the hallmarks of arson.
I can't believe you spoke to the boss like that; I didn't know you it in you.
2. It wasn't very clever to a fight with such a big boy, was it?
I'll be able to up speed as soon as we're out on the main road.
Be careful what you say because I think they're here to our brains.
3. We over the various proposals but didn't come to a decision.
He didn't agree at first but I eventually him round to my point of view.
The other children Johnny into climbing onto the roof.
4. In of your lack of experience, this is the most we can pay you.
They went down to Brighton with a(n) to buying a little house near the sea.
I'm afraid I take a dim of your behaviour during the school concert, Jones.
5. He has us his assurance that we'll all get a bonus at Christmas.
Those people have never two hoots about disturbing their neighbours.
Having his word not to see her again, he decided to emigrate to America.
6. P.D. James is an author who likes to her readers in suspense.
The important thing is to your head in an emergency.
Jack has promised to in touch with us when he goes to India.

SET B (guided)

1. Both of us had to get a second job to keep the from the door.
He's such a lone that we rarely see him out of working hours.
A man like that is a(n) in sheep's clothing so be on your guard against him.
2. The lift is out of order and I really felt my climbing all those stairs.
Nobody makes their own bread in this day and do they?
This is the of the computer, so it's vital you learn to use one.
3. I have my full all day, cooking and cleaning for you and the children.
You have so much time on your these days, you should start a hobby.
He's not very good with his , although he's a clever boy.
4. It's hard to if Mary is unhappy because she never smiles anyway.
I'll invite the neighbours to the party though I dare they won't come.
He didn't have much to for himself when he came back from the interview.
5. Judy will have to come to with the fact that she will never work again.
You either do this on my or you look for another job, young man.
She told us in no uncertain that we must be home by eleven.
6. You could use dad's car but in that you must fill it up with petrol.
This is the first serious of influenza we've had all winter.
We must get home before dark in any because the lights on
the car don't work.

- rat
- lion
- wolf
- time
- era
- age
- fingers
- hands
- arms
- tell
- speak
- say
- terms
- words
- ways
- case
- fact
- event



UNIT 8

TOPIC VOCABULARY & IDIOMS / EXPRESSIONS

SOCIOLOGY

Human groups range in size and complexity, from **primary groups** such as the **neighbourhood**, through social institutions such as **schools**, **churches**, **industries** and **governments**, to **society as a whole**. **Sociology** concerns itself with the study of all these kinds of groups and how they affect one another. It is a study of **human relations**, both **organised** and **informal**.

Sociologists have developed their own kind of **data** from which they arrive at **principles** or **laws** explaining and describing human social behaviour. They may however combine with other **social scientists** such as **anthropologists**, **economists**, **historians**, and **political scientists** in research programmes where each adds his own points of view and experience. They deal with such social problems as those relating to **marriage** and the **family**, **crime** and **juvenile delinquency**, **urban** and **rural life**, **public opinion**, **race relations** and other aspects of group living.

The study of small groups is known as **social organisation** and includes **clubs**, **teams**, **neighbourhood gangs** and larger organised groups such as **churches**, **schools** and **prisons** and established ways of doing things such as **marriage**, the **family** and **government**. This branch of sociology concerns itself with explaining how particular groups and institutions **operate**, **change** and **adapt**.

What happens to an individual in these social groups and how individuals affect social group life is called **social psychology**. As group life depends upon **communication**, social psychologists also study means of communication such as **press** and **television**, and the ways in which they affect individuals and groups. **Ecology** and **demography** together form another major field of sociology. **Ecology** studies how **social** and **economic factors**, and the **physical distribution of population**. **Demography** concerns itself with the study of population as shown in rates of **birth**, **marriage**, **divorce**, **crime**, **death**, **occupation** and **economic conditions**.

IDIOMS - EXPRESSIONS

- **to err is human**: everybody makes mistakes
- **club together**: to get together to buy sth, help sb
- **bad blood**: anger/unfriendly feelings between people
- **the law is an ass**: the law makes no sense, because it is man-made
- **man is a social animal**: people need the company of others
- **it's/as a matter of principle**: (not) do sth because it is morally correct
- **keep up with the Joneses**: want things because others have them
- **gang up on**: bully, get together to bully sb into doing/not doing sth
- **history is bunk**: there is no point learning history, it is boring, meaningless
- **mutual admiration society**: two/a group of people who continually praise each other
- **from the cradle to the grave**: all through one's life

B "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. People may need the company of others, but some prefer their own. (*man*)
Although , some people prefer their own company.
2. The Jones and Smith families seem always to be at loggerheads. (*blood*)
There the Jones and the Smith families.
3. I know we all make mistakes but did you really have to marry him? (*human*)
I know but did you really have to marry him?
4. "The headmaster should not allow older boys to pick on the juniors," said Mrs Brown. (*on*)
Mrs Brown criticised the headmaster the juniors.
5. Many people say that nine times out of ten the law makes no sense. (*ass*)
It is often because it usually makes no sense.
6. Roy and Jackie never seem to have anything but good to say about each other. (*mutual*)
Roy and Jackie have by the sounds of it.
7. Wanting what other people have is a waste of time, energy and money. (*keep*)
Trying a waste of time, energy and money.
8. "I will not join the strike because I think it is morally incorrect," Fiona said. (*of*)
Fiona said that would not join the strike.

OPEN CLOZE TEST

WOMEN IN SOCIETY

Women's lib, as it is (0)..... *known/called*, did not grow (1)..... the 1960's. As women fought (2)..... equality with men, "feminism" - the belief that women should have equal (3)..... with men - and "sexism" - the belief that one sex is inferior (4)..... the other - became part of the language. Women finally began to be accepted in jobs traditionally reserved for men, and today we have female postmen, female engineers, pilots and, in some countries, they even work (5)..... "navvies" on building sites.

Today, many women, for a (6)..... of reasons, choose to work. They may wish to supplement the family income, to fulfil themselves, to (7)..... up a challenge, or simply to escape the boredom when the children have (8)..... up and flown the nest. And (9)..... on.

However, there are still not many women, comparatively, in top jobs, and it is a common complaint that they must work (10)..... than men, not (11)..... to justify the position they hold, but also to gain promotion.

In some jobs they still (12)..... less pay than men for the same work and even when they work they usually have more responsibility for the children than the father.

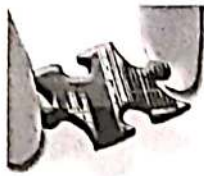
But things are changing. What will things be like in the future?

Some people argue that men and women are (13)..... to become more and more equal.

They say that recent advertisements showing men (14)..... care of the children and (15)..... the housework reflect what is happening in society and feel this trend will continue.

GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

- I've only one about buying the house, and that is the busy road it's on.
We hadn't made a(n) at the restaurant so we had to wait ages for a table.
A lorry crashed into the central on the motorway.
- Is that ghastly woman any of yours?
In the painting the people seem to be too large in to the ships.
His story bore no to the truth.
- Not all snakes are able to wrap themselves around the of a tree.
Which of the family do you come from?
As we were driving we came to a(n) in the road and didn't know which way to go.
- A watch usually quite well till you have it fixed.
Joe goes to the gym at night and off his frustrations.
It usually with children if you try listening to them.
- The extreme right a lot of ground in the last election.
Martha weight while she was on holiday.
Jimmy nothing by cheating in the exams because he still came bottom.
- Clothes are often a(n) of the job a person does.
On , I think I prefer the blue one.
First thing in the morning is not a good time to come across one's in the mirror.



UNIT 8

USE OF ENGLISH

HOW TO RAISE MONEY FOR CHARITY

This year, voluntary fund-raisers are expected to generate more than 100 million pounds for charities in Britain. Many projects are small, local events which may never hit the headlines, but everyone experiences the same sense of fun and achievement that comes from taking part and helping others. Nothing is more satisfying than to see the money rolling in from your own efforts for a good cause. If you want to help one of the larger charities, there are two ways to do so. The first is to take part in a nation-wide activity - there are scores of intriguing projects on offer.

Last summer, Spastics Society supporters raised 30,000 pounds from a sponsored "jailbreak" from Dartmoor prison, in which the object was to get as far as possible in 24 hours. Rugby enthusiasts raised 25,000 pounds for Help the Aged through a charity run. Team members from 114 clubs ran a mile each with a rugby ball from the north of Scotland to the south of Wales. Alternatively, you can plan your own event, and the crazier the ideas, the more publicity you can be assured of.

When planning these events, it is advisable to choose something you would enjoy doing yourself. If not, the chances are no one else will enjoy it, either. It is also a good idea to consult your charity's area representative. He or she can offer valuable advice, and is likely to have a list of local companies who might act as sponsors. Next, appoint your committee - eight to ten people is about right. Don't forget - too
line 16 → many cooks spoil the broth. Find out if any celebrities live in the area: most TV personalities like to play a part in local life. When you have decided on a reasonable charge, make it clear what people will be getting for their money. If you print in one corner of the ticket "10 pounds to include one drink and buffet supper," people know where they are. "Raffle and auction" printed in the other corner should be a sufficient hint to bring their cheque books. A local travel agent might be persuaded to donate a holiday as the raffle's first prize.

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. generate | <input type="text"/> | a. make news |
| 2. hit the headlines | <input type="text"/> | b. give |
| 3. consult | <input type="text"/> | c. well-known people |
| 4. celebrities | <input type="text"/> | d. produce, create |
| 5. raffle | <input type="text"/> | e. suggestion, clue |
| 6. auction | <input type="text"/> | f. check, discuss with |
| 7. hint | <input type="text"/> | g. sale of things to highest bidder |
| 8. donate | <input type="text"/> | h. sale of tickets to win prizes |

B Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. According to the writer, what positive effects can taking part in these events have on the individual?
.....
2. Explain in your own words what the writer is referring to when he uses the expression "too many cooks spoil the broth". (line 16)
.....



PLANNING IS ESSENTIAL

Organisation is the key to a successful fund-raising event. Young farmers of Nottingham raised 9,500 pounds on their sponsored run, but they started planning more than a year ahead. Their secretary began by contacting local firms to get sponsors. She wrote to more than 20 local authorities to obtain permission to collect in their areas, and notified the chief of police in three counties. They showed responsibility by putting flashing lights on their vehicle and keeping in contact with the police with a two-way radio. Much the same sort of planning goes for other outdoor events, such as a garden fête or car-boot sale. Remember to think of car-parking, safety of access and the problems posed by unaccustomed traffic in a normally quiet area. For even the smallest event, notify the police; in case of large crowds, a Red Cross team should be on hand.

Your scheme doesn't have to be spectacular. Don't underestimate the humble coffee morning or bring- line 10
and-buy sale, which can bring in surprisingly large sums of money.

It is vital to check that your event does not clash with another being held on the same day - your public library may have a charity events diary, and local newspapers often list future attractions. Always confirm the booking of your site. And be careful not to overspend - a danger if you hire expensive marquees or sound equipment.

Be clear on sponsorship, which is basically of two kinds. The first is when you collect a number of supporters who will each back you for, say, an agreed sum per mile on a 20-mile walk. The second is when a business firm helps to subsidise your event, in return for free advertising. Take care to think out your first approach to a potential sponsor. Don't overdo requests. If you start by asking for 50,000 line 20
pounds it will reduce your credibility. Above all, enjoy your fund-raising. It requires dedication and hard work, but you not only help others, you vastly enrich your own life.

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. notified | <input type="text"/> | a. not usual |
| 2. fête | <input type="text"/> | b. support, sponsor |
| 3. unaccustomed | <input type="text"/> | c. informed |
| 4. clash with | <input type="text"/> | d. possible |
| 5. marquees | <input type="text"/> | e. outdoor entertainment |
| 6. back | <input type="text"/> | f. be on same date as |
| 7. subsidise | <input type="text"/> | g. large tents |
| 8. potential | <input type="text"/> | h. give money to |

B Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. In your own words, why does the writer use the word "humble" in reference to the coffee mornings? (line 10)
.....
2. What does he mean by "reduce your credibility" (line 20)?
.....
3. In a paragraph of between 50 and 70 words, summarise, in your own words as far as possible, what could happen if you failed to plan ahead when organising an event.



UNIT 8

READING

You are going to read an extract from a newspaper article. Seven paragraphs have been removed from the extract. Choose from the paragraphs A-H the one which fits each gap (1-7). There is one extra paragraph that you do not need to use.

WITH THE HELP OF DOLPHINS

It began as a deep rumble, shattering the pre-dawn silence. Within minutes on that January morning in 1994, the Los Angeles area was in the grip of one of the most destructive earthquakes in its history. At Six Flags Magic Mountain theme park, 20 miles north of the city, three dolphins were alone with their terror. They swam frantically in circles as heavy concrete pillars collapsed around their pool and roof tiles crashed into the water.

1

Jeff Siegel was born hyperactive, partially deaf and lacking normal co-ordination. Since he couldn't hear words clearly, he developed a severe speech impediment that made it almost impossible for others to understand him. At nursery school, the small sandy-haired child was taunted for being backward by other children. Even home was no refuge. Jeff's mother Bonnie was unprepared to deal with his problems.

2

Furious, his mother hauled him back to school and forced him to apologise to the teacher. The entire class overheard. As the mispronounced and barely intelligible words were dragged out of him, he became instant prey for his classmates. To fend off the hostile world, Jeff kept to isolated corners of the playground and hid in his room at home, dreaming of a place where he could be accepted. Then one day when Jeff was nine, he went with his class to Los Angeles' Marineland. At the dolphin show, he was electrified by the energy and exuberant friendliness of the beautiful animals.

3

He was transferred from the state school to the centre. Over the next two years he became less anxious, and his academic achievement improved dramatically. At the start of his eighth year he returned, unwillingly, to state school. Tests now showed his IQ to be above 130, the gifted range. Therapy had improved his speech, but to classmates Jeff was still the victim. The year was unfolding as the worst of Jeff's life until the day his father took him to Sea World in San Diego, California.

4

The first to swim over was Grid Eye, the dominant female in the pool. The 650-pound dolphin glided to where Jeff sat and remained motionless below him. *Will she let me touch her?* he wondered, putting his hand in the water. As he stroked the dolphin's smooth skin, Grid Eye inched closer.

It was a moment of sheer ecstasy for the young boy. The outgoing animals quickly became the friends Jeff had never had, and he began to live from visit to visit. And since the dolphin area was isolated at the far end of Marineland, Jeff often found himself alone with the playful creatures. One day Sharky, a young female, glided just below the surface until her tail was in Jeff's hand, and then stopped.

5

When Sharky surfaced to breathe, boy and dolphin faced each other for a minute, Jeff laughing and the dolphin open-mouthed, grinning. Then Sharky circled and put her tail back in Jeff's hand to start the game again. The boy and the massive animals often played tag, with Jeff and the dolphins racing round the pool to slap a predetermined point, or giving each other hand-to-flipper "high five" claps. To Jeff, the games were a magical connection that he alone shared with the animals.

6

He was unprepared for the result. Embarrassed by the extent to which he'd been playing with the dolphins without their knowledge, Marineland management revoked his pass. Jeff returned home numb with disbelief. For their part, Jeff's parents were relieved. They could see no benefit to the time their strange, misfit son was spending with the dolphins - no benefit until a day in June 1984, when Bonnie Siegel took an unexpected long-distance telephone call. That evening she asked her son, "Have you entered some kind of contest?" Sheepishly Jeff confessed that he had written an essay for a highly-coveted Earthwatch scholarship. The winner would spend a month in Hawaii with dolphin experts. Now, telling his mother about it, he expected a tirade. Instead she said quietly, "Well, you won."

7

Though already holding down two jobs, he wanted to do volunteer work with Magic Mountain's dolphins on his days off. Suzanne Fortier gave him the chance - and was immediately amazed. Of the 200 volunteers she'd trained in ten years, she'd never seen anyone with Jeff's intuitive ability with dolphins.

READING

A

They seemed to smile directly at him, something that happened rarely in his life. The boy sat transfixed, overwhelmed with emotion and a longing to stay. By the end of that school year, Jeff's teachers had labelled him emotionally disturbed and learning disabled. But testing at the nearby Switzer Centre for children with disabilities showed Jeff to be average-to-bright, though so anxiety-ridden that his Maths-test score indicated learning difficulties.

B

Now what? he wondered. Suddenly Sharky dived a foot or so below the surface, pulling Jeff's hand and arm underwater. He laughed and pulled back without letting go. The dolphin dived again, deeper. Jeff pulled back harder. It was like a game of tug-of-war.

C

Transporting a dolphin is normally a routine procedure, after it has been safely guided through a tunnel and hoisted on a canvas sling. But the water-level in the connecting tunnel was too low for the animals to swim through. The three dolphins would have to be caught in open water and then manoeuvred into the slings.

D

Forty miles to the south, 26-year-old Jeff Siegel was thrown out of bed. Crawling to the window, Jeff looked out at the convulsing city and thought of the creatures who mattered more to him than anything else in the world. *I've got to get to the dolphins*, he told himself. *They rescued me, and now they need me to rescue them.* To those who had known Jeff in childhood, a more unlikely hero could not have been imagined.

E

Jeff's acceptance by the dolphins boosted his confidence, and he gradually emerged from his dark shell. He enrolled in a course at a nearby aquarium

and devoured books on marine biology. He became a walking encyclopaedia on dolphins and, to his family's amazement, braved his speech impediment to become a volunteer tour guide. In 1983 Jeff wrote an article for the American Cetacean Society's newsletter, describing his experiences with the Marineland dolphins.

F

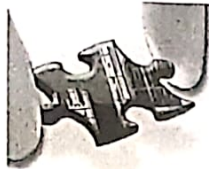
Jeff spent the month in Hawaii, teaching strings of commands to dolphins to test their memories. In the autumn, he fulfilled another condition of the scholarship by giving a talk on marine mammals to fellow pupils at school. It earned him, at last, grudging respect from his peers. After leaving school, Jeff struggled to find work at various marine-research jobs, supplementing the low pay by moonlighting. He also continued his biology studies. In February 1992, he turned up at the office of Suzanne Fortier, director of marine-animal training at Six Flags Magic Mountain.

G

Brought up in a rigid, authoritarian household, she was overly strict and often made angry by his differences. She simply wanted him to fit in. His father, a police officer, took extra jobs to make ends meet and was often gone for 16 hours a day. Anxious and frightened on the first day of primary school, five-year-old Jeff climbed over the playground fence and ran home.

H

The minute the boy saw the dolphins, the same rush of joy welled up in him. He stayed rooted to the spot as the sleek mammals glided past. Jeff worked to earn money for an annual pass to Marineland, closer to his home. On his first solo visit, he sat on the low wall surrounding the dolphin pool. The dolphins, accustomed to being fed by visitors, soon approached the astonished boy.



UNIT

9

CLAUSES (I)

CLAUSES OF CONCESSION

Despite the fact it has always been desirable to tell the truth, it has seldom been necessary.

A. J. Balfour

• Although/Though/Even though/if he was competent, he wasn't chosen for the post. (clause)

Despite/In spite of/
Regardless of/Irrespective of/
Notwithstanding

his competence,... (noun)
(his) being competent, ... (gerund)
the fact that he is competent,... (that clause)

A **HOWEVER/
NO MATTER HOW
+ ADJ/ADV**

- It doesn't matter/It makes no difference how tired you are, you mustn't go to sleep.
- *However tired you are, you mustn't go to sleep.*
- *No matter how tired you are, you mustn't go to sleep.*

B **NO MATTER (WHO, WHAT, WHICH, WHERE...) = WHOEVER/WHATEVER/WHICHEVER/WHEREVER**

- It doesn't matter/make any difference who you (may) ask, they'll all tell you the same thing.
- *No matter who you (may) ask, they'll all tell you the same thing.*
- *Whoever you (may) ask, they'll all tell you the same thing.*

C **ADJ/ADV +
THOUGH/AS**

- Even though she was/may have been desperate, she never asked anyone for help.
- *Desperate though/as she was/may have been, she never asked anyone for help.*

**MUCH AS/
THOUGH**

- Although I enjoy sailing, I would not want to own a yacht.
- *Much as/though I enjoy sailing, I would not want to own a yacht.*

**EVEN IF +
WERE TO/SHOULD**

- They can/might invite me to the wedding but I won't go.
- *Even if they were to/should invite me to the wedding, I wouldn't/won't go.*

CHANGES IN PARTS OF SPEECH

ADJECTIVE ⇌ NOUN

- far ⇌ distance
- hot ⇌ cold } ⇌ temperature
- heavy ⇌ weight
- strong ⇌ strength
- old ⇌ age
- clever ⇌ intelligence
- expensive ⇌ cost
- afraid ⇌ fear
- worse ⇌ deterioration
- better ⇌ improvement
- ripped, torn, etc. ⇌ condition of
- less/more ⇌ reduction/increase

VERB ⇌ NOUN

- ask ⇌ request
- keep on ⇌ persistence
- say ⇌ statement/claim
- want ⇌ desire
- try ⇌ attempt/effort
- smell ⇌ odour, stench

VERB + ADVERB/ADJECTIVE ⇌ ADJECTIVE + NOUN

- tasted horrible ⇌ horrible taste
- explain clearly ⇌ clear explanation
- contribute a little ⇌ negligible contribution

• a lot of ⇌ number/amount of

• no (money) ⇌ lack/shortage of

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

- Though he's never been to Japan, he's an expert on its culture.
- *He has never been to Japan, and yet he's an expert on its culture.*
- Although he cancelled his subscription, they continued to send him the magazine.
- *He cancelled his subscription. For all that, they continued to send him the magazine.*
- Although they gave him every opportunity, he failed to come through.
- *Though given every opportunity, he failed to come through.*
- Although he's fabulously wealthy, he dresses like a pauper. ⇌ *For all his wealth, he dresses like a pauper.*
- He couldn't pronounce the word no matter how hard he tried. ⇌ *Try as he might, he couldn't pronounce the word.*
- Harold eats to live, but Barry lives to eat. ⇌ *Whereas/While Harold eats to live, Barry lives to eat.*
- He still refused, even though I kept begging him. ⇌ *However/No matter how much I begged him, he still refused.*
- Although there was a storm, they set out to sea. ⇌ *The storm notwithstanding, they set out to sea.*



CLAUSES OF RESULT

A SUCH/SO... THAT

- She's **such** a bore **that** everybody avoids her.
- He was in **such** pain **that** he couldn't move.
- Ted was **so** happy to be home **that** he threw a party.
- They scrubbed it **so** thoroughly **that** it shone.

E SO + ADJECTIVE + A/AN + NOUN

- The story was **so** absurd **that** even the magistrate laughed.
- It was **so** absurd a story **that** even the magistrate laughed.
- He accepted the offer because it was **so** generous.
- It was **so** generous an offer **that** he accepted it.

C TOO + (ADJ + A/AN + /MUCH OF A/AN + NOUN)/NOT ENOUGH OF + A/AN + NOUN + INFINITIVE

- She's a cautious person and won't take risks.
- The children are **so** excited they can't sleep.
- He doesn't have the nerve/courage to stand up to him.
- Anne's **too** much of a realist to enjoy this book.
- She's **too** cautious a person to take risks.
- The children are **too** excited to sleep.
- He's **too** much of a coward to stand up to him.
- Anne's **not enough** of a romantic to enjoy this book.

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

so as (not) to

- The departure time was delayed **so as** to accommodate passengers from connecting flights.

in order (not) to

- He stayed up later than usual **in order** not to miss the film.

so that/in order that

- He turned off the light **so that/in order that** people would think they were out.

with a view to/ the aim/purpose of in an effort/attempt to

- The leaders met **in order** to establish a ceasefire.
- The leaders met **with a view to/the aim/purpose of** establishing a ceasefire.
- The leaders met **in an effort/attempt to** establish a ceasefire.

avoid + gerund

- He left the room **so as** not to/in order not to confront them.
- He left the room **to avoid** confronting them.

prevent + (sth/sb + from) + gerund

- The door was locked **in order** to keep out reporters.
- The door was locked **to prevent** reporters (from) getting in/entering.

in case (of)

- We should have an alternative plan **in case** the original fails/should fail.
- In case** of an emergency, call me at this number.

for fear (of/that)

- He kept quiet **for fear** of angering her father.
- He booked well in advance **for fear** that there wouldn't be seats.

ORAL PRACTICE (clauses of concession, result & purpose)

1. They're always out whenever I call. **No...**
2. I appreciate your offer but I really don't need your help. **Much...**
3. Although she instructed them not to, the twins watched TV while she was out. **Despite...**
4. They offered the service free so that their customers wouldn't be inconvenienced. **So as...**
5. The serving was so large he couldn't finish it by himself. **It was too...**
6. He won't tell a lie because he's extremely honest. **He's too...**
7. James didn't want to enter into an argument so he left the room. **James left the room to...**
8. Though appearing relaxed, he was actually quite nervous. **Relaxed...**
9. She was so frustrated by the experience that she gave up. **It was such...**
10. Her blood pressure is still high, though she's consuming less salt. **Despite a...**
11. Although it was snowing heavily they continued their climb to the next base camp. **Notwithstanding...**
12. I don't care how long it takes, it has to be done. **However...**



UNIT 9

USE OF ENGLISH

A "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. Although he tried hard to dissuade her, she went on the trip alone. (*all*)
For on the trip alone.
2. I kept quiet because I did not want to say the wrong thing. (*of*)
For quiet.
3. Fred tried hard to start the car, but without success. (*how*)
No the car, nothing happened.
4. Although Judy was severely disabled she participated in many sports. (*her*)
Despite in many sports.
5. They remain close friends despite many arguments. (*fallen*)
They remain close friends many times.
6. This matter is of the utmost importance and we should not turn a blind eye to it. (*too*)
This matter to.
7. He took out another loan so that he could keep his creditors at bay. (*aim*)
He took out another loan at bay.
8. The law applies equally to everyone, no matter how old they are. (*irrespective*)
The law applies equally age.
9. We called in at the bank to apply for a credit card. (*with*)
We called in at the bank a credit card.
10. Although the desert was intensely hot, they left the oasis and continued their journey. (*notwithstanding*)
The the oasis and continued their journey.

B DERIVATIVES

A DAUGHTER FOR FRED

In (0) celebration of the birth of his first daughter after four sons, and to the (1) of all his friends who were present, Fred (2) promised to buy us all whatever our hearts desired, whatever the cost. He also wanted us to (3) him as a father, although it was obvious he expected a glowing report, as he (4) pointed out how well brought up his sons were, and how other parents spoke (5) of them. (6) , he had always been a modest man, but now he wanted to share his (7) , not only with us, but with the whole world. He (8) calling his daughter something exotic, like Zamina or Cleopatra, but admitted the final (9) would be his wife's, as it had always been, and he had never dared show any (10) with her.

CELEBRATE
AMUSE
GENEROUS
VALUE
PROUD
ENVY
TRADITION
EXCITE
FAVOUR
CHOOSE
AGREE

GUIDED CLOZE TEST: FILL IN

PORTRAITURE

There is no doubt that portraiture is a tricky subject for artists. There are some people who have the knack (0)..... capturing faces and expressions (1)..... even thinking about it, and they are fortunate, although they are not necessarily good artists. However, the idea (2)..... painting portraits, whether in watercolour or oils, is particularly difficult should be resisted - it is simply not true. (3)..... good painting, least of all (4)..... a portrait, can be built (5)..... a shaky foundation, so before you begin to paint a face you (6)..... understand its structure and be (7)..... of drawing it convincingly. A good (8)..... of getting to know the basics is to use (9)..... as a model and start with a self-portrait. There are (10)..... artists who have not painted themselves at (11)..... time or another. You can also practise by drawing (12)..... photographs but (13)..... they are very good ones, they are not always helpful. Furthermore, shapes and forms are often obscured by dark shadows and bleached-out highlights. Photographs are more useful in the later (14)..... of painting a portrait. Most professional painters take photographs as a useful reference for details of clothing and background, but (15)..... for the face itself.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| 0. of / on / in / at | 6. have / ought / must / can | 11. a / no / any / one |
| 1. still / yet / without / just | 7. able / good / skilled / capable | 12. with / by / some / from |
| 2. about / of / for / that | 8. idea / way / style / process | 13. although / if / unless / even |
| 3. A / No / The / One | 9. one / someone / yours / yourself | 14. parts / stages / aspects / degrees |
| 4. all / which / that / course | 10. some / number / few / a lot | 15. usually / always / rarely / hardly |
| 5. in / on / at / with | | |

E Fill each of the numbered blanks in the passage with one suitable word.

WORLD FOOD DAY

Chronic hunger and malnutrition represent the most compelling dilemma of our times. There are (0)..... no simple solutions but there are signs of hope, perhaps the most important of these (1)..... the growing number of people (2)..... recognise the reality and nature of the interdependence (3)..... nations. This recognition of the vital links (4)..... the problems of food, trade and international finance was the impetus for establishing World Food Day. The observance of World Food Day has encouraged (5)..... around the globe who share a commitment (6)..... eliminating hunger and malnutrition to focus on the needs of the poor. (7)..... to the statisticians, the estimated (8)..... of people afflicted by hunger and malnutrition is about 500 million. But (9)..... alone do not begin to tell the real story of humiliation, sickness and suffering which that total represents. Conditions facing the rural poor and the unemployed urban dweller are steadily worsening and little has been done to reduce their vulnerability to the impact of (10)..... harvests and natural calamities. Even more depressing is the prospect of over one and a half billion more people to be fed by the (11)..... 2000. Nevertheless, a declaration put (12)..... by experts at the end of the World Food Day Colloquium held in Rome in October 1982 struck a cautiously optimistic note. It read "More than ever before, humanity (13)..... the resources, capital, technology and knowledge to promote development and to feed all people, both (14)..... and in the future. (15)..... the year 2000 the entire world population can be fed and nourished". We shall have to wait and see.



UNIT 9

PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING

ANTIGUA HURRICANE



You can't stay confined to the house for ever, dear. Just face it - he's not going to phone.

There has been widespread coverage of the hurricane Bobby which recently struck the West Indian island of Antigua. The forecast of its arrival was **accurate** to within six hours. It raged, **without respite**, for three days, and was not **confined to** Antigua alone, but caused damage on neighbouring islands, too. **In retrospect**, more should have been done to protect local people. Working **in conjunction with** US and Canadian troops, the government is **providing** people with food and shelter, though **lack of** adequate equipment is making this a difficult task. "It's like being **under siege**," said the Prime Minister.

"At first sight, I thought everything was lost - all public works are **at a standstill**. We are still, however, **on the brink of** a real disaster." **In support of** Antigua, Jamaica has sent supplies and **contributed to** its recovery by sending people who **specialise in** minimising hurricane damage. **In reality** the damage will take months, if not years, to put right, and it is **in doubt** whether some of the old buildings will be restored to their former glory.

FILL IN with the appropriate prepositions.

- | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|---|----------------|---|---------------|---|----------------|
| agreement | ⇒ | favour | ⇒ | a sound | ⇒ | silence |
| top | ⇒ | addition | ⇒ | issue | ⇒ | question |
| advance | ⇒ | time | ⇒ | purpose | ⇒ | design |
| reason | ⇒ | owing | ⇒ | addicted | ⇒ | hooked |



I'm in favour of the ban on ivory trading. I'd like to drive the point home to a few more hunters, though.

REPHRASING

- exaggerate ⇒ make too much of ⇒ blow sth out of all proportion ⇒ stretch the truth
- emphasise ⇒ play up ⇒ drive the point home ⇒ labour the point ⇒ with the accent on
- lose ⇒ suffer a defeat (at the hands of) ⇒ meet one's match ⇒ come off worst ⇒ take a beating
- change one's mind ⇒ have second thoughts ⇒ have a change of heart ⇒ revise one's opinion ⇒ do a U-turn

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- As long as you let us know well in advance, we can change your ticket for you. (time)
As long as, we can change your ticket for you.
- The situation has been grossly exaggerated, I'm afraid. (proportion)
The situation, I'm afraid.
- The defendant accepted the judge's sentence in silence, apparently. (sound)
The defendant accepted, apparently.
- Very few employees agreed with the new proposals. (favour)
Very few employees proposals.
- Real Madrid lost heavily to Barcelona in the quarter final. (defeat)
Real Madrid in the quarter final.
- Soames was given the post owing to his connections with the chairman. (reason)
Soames was appointed with the chairman.
- The company changed their minds and decided to withdraw the product from the market. (heart)
The company to withdraw the product from the market.
- Not only did we miss the flight, we also had to pay for another ticket. (addition)
In to pay for another ticket.
- Many youngsters are addicted to video games. (hooked)
Many video games.
- Although the article may make sense, I think it's making too much of the point. (labouring)
The article may make sense, too much.

HOLD - LAY EXPRESSIONS



- ◇ **hold fast/hold sth fast:** not change one's mind when others try to persuade you to/hold sth tightly and firmly
 ▶ She always *holds fast* to her principles. / He moved along the ledge, *holding fast* to the wall.
- ◇ **hold out hope:** have hope
 ▶ We don't *hold out much hope* now, as they've been missing for 5 days.
- ◇ **hold the fort:** look after sth (a shop/business) while sb is away
 ▶ Keith is on a business trip but his partner is *holding the fort* while he is away.
- ◇ **hold court:** be surrounded by many people who are paying attention because one is interesting or famous
 ▶ Veronica was sitting on the terrace *holding court*, as usual.
- ◇ **hold sb spellbound by one's words:** fascinate, interest sb very much in what one says
 ▶ I was *held spellbound* by her words and couldn't wait to meet her personally.
- ◇ **hold sth dear:** consider sth as precious; have affection for
 ▶ Michael *holds his books very dear*, and never lends them out.
- ◇ **hold sb responsible:** consider sb responsible for sth
 ▶ My boss will *hold me responsible* for whatever goes wrong.
- ◇ **hold in high esteem:** have great respect/admiration for
 ▶ Nelson Mandela is *held in high esteem* all over the world.



All right everyone, I'm going to lay this on the line - absenteeism in this company has become a serious problem.

- ◇ **lay claim to:** say that sth belongs to you; claim that sth is true
 ▶ Three countries are *laying claim* to that group of uninhabited islands.
- ◇ **lay one's hands on:** obtain (with difficulty)
 ▶ Do you know where I can *lay my hands on* a good French technical dictionary?
- ◇ **lay down one's life for:** sacrifice one's life for
 ▶ Tony is the best friend I have in the whole world; I'd *lay down my life* for him any day.
- ◇ **lay one's cards on the table:** be honest/open about one's feelings/plans
 ▶ He *laid his cards on the table* and told his employees that he was facing bankruptcy.
- ◇ **lay the foundations for:** prepare the way for
 ▶ The historic meeting of the two presidents *laid the foundations* for peace between the two countries.
- ◇ **lay (sth) bare:** reveal/expose
 ▶ She was extremely timid and found it difficult to *lay bare* her feelings.
- ◇ **lay sth on the line:** risk losing sth as a result of doing sth/express sth in a clear manner
 ▶ By giving out company secrets, Wilson is *laying his job on the line*.
- ◇ **lay down the law:** give orders
 ▶ He's a very strict teacher and is always *laying down the law* to his students.

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. Mr Atkinson is a very well-respected member of the community. (*esteem*)
 Mr Atkinson by the community.
2. I'm having a hard time finding a second-hand petrol pump for my car. (*hands*)
 I'm having a hard time pump for my car.
3. Although they tried hard to convince her, Claire would not change her opinion. (*fast*)
 Try as they might to convince her, opinion.
4. Can you look after the shop for a couple of hours tomorrow? (*hold*)
 Can you for a couple of hours tomorrow?
5. Derek does not appreciate that Lisa risked her career to save his job. (*line*)
 Derek does not appreciate that Lisa his job.
6. Why don't you be frank with us and tell us what's on your mind? (*cards*)
 Why don't you us what's on your mind?
7. Russia and Japan both say that the island is theirs. (*lay*)
 Russia island.
8. My brother is very attached to his stamp collection, and keeps it locked up. (*holds*)
 My brother , and keeps it locked up.
9. A true patriot would willingly die for his country. (*life*)
 A true patriot his country.
10. They blamed her for the error, even though she had been absent at the time. (*responsible*)
 She she had been absent at the time.



UNIT 9

ADVERBS • COLLOCATIONS

THE PASSING OF AN ERA



You see, Doctor,
I'm not thoroughly
convinced I need glasses.

"Well, I always was a great traveller, Brenda, but it's well-nigh impossible to find anywhere worth going any more. Charles and I used to greatly enjoy our sojourns in the South of France, but that's before the masses started travelling, of course. I mean that part of the world was universally recognised as a place where someone with, well, class would go. Being extremely rich, we have more royalty than practically anyone else. I'm completely baffled why they let those awful tourists fill up the beaches and restaurants. I find them highly annoying. Our favourite hotel in Nice seems to be permanently booked. In fact the whole of Provence has changed drastically. I thoroughly deplore the fact that even my chauffeur and cook go there on holiday. And I was completely dumbfounded one year when I saw our gardener in the casino. For too many people are upwardly mobile as far as I can see. I distinctly recall the days when the person at the next table in a restaurant would be a Duke or a Baron, not a bus driver. I'm deeply vexed by the whole business. We may even sell the house in Cannes. Another husband, dear?"

1. Match the words in bold type with the sets of adverbs.

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 1. impossible | a. generally, universally, officially, widely |
| 2. recognise | b. completely, fully, totally |
| 3. reject | c. almost, practically, virtually |
| 4. enjoy | d. enormously, immensely, very much |

ADVERB COLLOCATIONS

- * thoroughly convinced, pregnant
- * deeply offended, ungracious
- * vividly describe, measure
- * vaguely about (to), familiar
- * face squarely
- * profoundly religious, intimate

ADJECTIVE & NOUN COLLOCATIONS

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| 1. discernible | a. explanation | 11. official | e. remark, death, war |
| 2. last | b. improvement, difference | 12. momentary | f. value, interest, goal |
| 3. climatic | c. respect, benefit, friend, feelings | 13. untimely | g. point, question |
| 4. plausible | d. prospect, task | 14. unanimous | h. confirmation, order |
| 5. mutual | e. name, word, time, result | 15. intrinsic | i. approval, vote, law |
| 6. daunting | f. effects, conditions, changes | 16. mod! | j. weakness |

M.C.Q. CLOZE TEST

There has been (1) confirmation of the death of George Handelstein. His body was found in a remote Amazonian village by telephone engineers, according to a Brazilian newspaper. His friends and colleagues are (2) convinced that he was murdered because he knew too much. According to them, the only (3) explanation for his death is that he had discovered plans to expand the drugs trade in the area. A (4) religious man, he was both feared and respected by natives and drug traffickers alike. His (5) death at the age of 45 will be a blow to the local tribes, to whom he had taught in the Brazilian Parliament. He had made a (6) difference to the way they had been treated.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. a. mutual | b. official | c. far | d. mock |
| 2. e. vividly | f. immensely | g. vaguely | h. thoroughly |
| 3. i. plausible | j. daunting | k. discernible | l. untimely |
| 4. m. upwardly | n. distinctly | o. profoundly | p. practically |
| 5. q. intrinsic | r. untimely | s. plausible | t. mutual |
| 6. u. discernible | v. daunting | w. square | x. deep |

RELATED WORDS

MOVEMENT

- in full swing
- posture for (position)
- a lame-sitting duck

- start/get the ball rolling
- a slip of the tongue
- get sb's drift/the drift of

- duck one's responsibilities
- get (back) into the swing of
- I made my heart/stomach flutter



R.E.Q. CLOSE TEST

The party was in full _____ by the time I arrived. I was feeling a little nervous and shy, so I had a couple of drinks to relax. Suddenly I looked across the room and saw a woman who made my heart _____ I couldn't help staring at her. Then she turned towards me and smiled. I smiled back. I just hoped I wasn't _____ backwards and forwards after my two drinks. Finally, I plucked up courage and walked over to her and started a conversation. To get the ball rolling, I asked her about her job, but I was so busy looking at her, I didn't really get the drift _____ of what she was talking about. Suddenly I heard myself saying "That's interesting, my mother is a bar, too." She looked at me strangely and said "No, I said I was a lawyer." "I'm so sorry," I stammered, "Just a _____ of the tongue." but a good start to the evening.

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. a. gear | 2. swing | 3. only | 4. rock |
| 2. a. swing | 3. trip | 4. flutter | 5. glide |
| 3. a. rolling | 4. gliding | 5. drifting | 6. swooping |
| 4. a. drifting | 5. rolling | 6. bounding | 7. vaulting |
| 5. a. drift | 6. swim | 7. appear | 8. slip |
| 6. a. trip | 7. post | 8. slip | 9. vault |



UNIT

9

EXPRESSING...

SOLVING/DEALING WITH A PROBLEM



Mr Woods goes to great pains to establish a rapport with his students.

- work out
- figure out
- resolve itself
- clear up (sth)
- sort (sb/sth/itself) out
- straighten (sb/sth) out
- come up with a solution
- put (sb/sth) right/to rights
- iron out (sth/a problem/the difficulties)

THINK

- occur to
- dwell on
- weigh up
- sleep on it
- spring to mind
- the way I see it
- cross sb's mind
- toy with the idea
- take it for granted
- be wrapped up in
- off the top of your head
- turn sth over in your mind

TRY

- LOSE**
- go down
 - be behind
 - not be in the running
 - be a pushover
 - nowhere to be found
 - lose one's bearings
 - have a stab at
 - try one's hand at
 - pull out all the stops
 - put one's mind to sth
 - give sth one's best shot
 - go out of one's way to do sth
 - bend over backwards to do sth
 - go to/take great pains to do sth
 - take the trouble to do sth (= bother)

A GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

1. I accepted their invitation like a(n) because I'd never been to Spain before.
Winning the contract to build his house was a(n) in the arm for our new company.
I doubt whether I'll win this race but I'll give it my best anyway.
2. I suppose you know your own best, but I wouldn't work for such a low salary.
When I had turned it over in my once or twice, I decided against going.
As she was telling us what had happened, it crossed my that she was lying.
3. He called for help at the of his voice but no one heard him.
I can't give you an answer off the of my head, you know.
They are engaged in secret work for the government.
4. We were so embarrassed by what he said that we didn't know which to look.
We could buy a new house or renovate this one, but either it's going to be expensive.
You might have thanked me when I'd gone out of my to help you with this.
5. If you your mind to it, you can get it finished before five.
A single red rose at each place setting will the finishing touch to the dining table.
I made a bad mistake at the very beginning and I don't know how I'm going to it right.
6. When the policeman approached him, Trevor his head and ran for it.
We're late because we our bearings in all those narrow little streets.
Walking by the river was so peaceful that I track of time and missed my bus.

E "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. I think this difficult situation will resolve itself after a while. (sort)
I think this after a while.
2. There was nothing he wouldn't do to try and help us. (bent)
He us.
3. He didn't think she would tell everybody about the meeting. (to)
It tell everybody about the meeting.
4. Both candidates were trying hard to avoid the issue. (great)
Both candidates the issue.
5. The two sides met with a view to settling the problem. (out)
The two sides met the problem.
6. Don't decide right away - give it some thought and ring me next week. (on)
Don't decide right away - week.
7. The mayor did everything imaginable to impress the visiting dignitaries. (all)
The mayor the visiting dignitaries.
8. I had such faith in him that it never entered my head that he was lying. (mind)
Such was my faith in him he was lying.

USE OF ENGLISH

GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

Think of one word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.

SET A (based on PREPOSITIONS & REPHRASING, LOOK EXPRESSIONS, ADVERBS - COLLOCATIONS, RELATED WORDS)

- I find that jogging in the morning makes me up an appetite.
Harry has a lot of problems to out with his wife and family.
We are way behind schedule so everyone will have to overtime.
- Clara always bends over to help her friends.
David knew the business by the end of his first year of employment.
If you spell the word "radar" you still get "radar".
- I hope those old water pipes don't a leak while we're away.
Let's a surprise on John and invite Marion to the party.
I don't know why it should suddenly to mind but it's a year since Henry died.
- I felt a terrible of pain in my left leg when I slipped on Ken's toy trains.
It's a lot of work, I know, but I'm sure you'll have a good at it.
Linda's refusal to help Peter pay off his loan came as a real in the back.
- The I see it, we either pay the fine or go to jail.
Please keep out of dad's when he's cleaning the car.
I was late because I lost my on those back country roads.
- Agassi had a tough match yesterday but finally managed to out on top.
I don't know what to buy Jane for her birthday but I will doubtlessly up with something.
One has to to grips with one's problems if one wants to succeed in life.

SET B (guided)

- It looks like a simple task on the of it but I'll need a few more details.
She found it hard to keep a straight when she saw what he was wearing.
That new shopping mall has changed the of my hometown entirely.
• look
• face
• front
- I spent hours getting to Tina's flat only to that she had gone out for the day.
It will take time to your feet in this office but I know you will enjoy the job.
She looked so happy I couldn't it in my heart to tell her the truth.
• see
• discover
• find
- I had to put Jimmy in his when he kept talking in church.
The silver cup I won for gymnastics takes pride of in the sitting room.
That old fridge looks really out of in your ultra-modern kitchen.
• place
• part
• order
- If Janet doesn't get her own, she makes an awful fuss.
You've put the cassette in the wrong round, I think.
Peter really knows his around the back streets of London.
• side
• turn
• way
- Everyone on Johnny because he was useless at sport.
She said very little and only at her food so I don't think she's very well.
We went slowly through the town but up speed on the dual carriageway.
• looked
• picked
• went
- Half the with Tommy is that he's so lazy.
Billy's in a spot of with the police because of a watch he said he'd found.
I don't think you realise the I've taken to get you these tickets.
• problem
• fuss
• trouble



TOPIC VOCABULARY & IDIOMS / EXPRESSIONS

SCIENCE

We call the organised knowledge of nature, "science", especially **natural science**. Natural science includes such branches as **physics, chemistry, zoology, botany, geology and astronomy**, the study of which is known as **pure science**. Then there is **applied science** which includes **engineering, pharmacy, animal husbandry, forestry and navigation**. Our aim in pure science is to **find and test basic knowledge** which is built around major ideas, or **scientific principles**. In applied science the principles of pure science are put to work in the **solution of everyday problems**.

Physics is primarily a study of **energy** such as **heat, light, electricity, sound, and mechanical and atomic energy**. Physicists, chemists, astronomers and geologists need to have a good understanding of the principles of physics. So also do **engineers and doctors, opticians, weather forecasters** and many others. A knowledge of botany is important not only to **botanists** but also to those working in such areas as **forestry, pharmacy and farming**. Lines dividing the various sciences are not often clear. For instance, **radioactivity** concerns both chemists and physicists; **biochemistry** is the province of chemists and biologists; **geophysics** is geology and physics.

Aeroplanes, radio, television and labour-saving devices are **applications** of scientific principles. The **scientific method**, however, that scientists use to find and test knowledge, has also been useful in such **social sciences** as **sociology, anthropology, psychology, economics and education**.

The method is not a simple one. **Exploratory experiments** may be needed in order to make the problem clear. A **conclusion** may turn out to be a good "**hypothesis**" for a more careful experiment, and attempts to **verify the conclusion** may merely result in new problems and new hypotheses. Often there are several, equally reasonable, hypotheses and these are called "**working hypotheses**". And of course hypotheses are discarded when **proven false**.

IDIOMS - EXPRESSIONS

- **good as gold**: description of sb who behaves very well
- **set the wheels turning/in motion**: do sth to get a process started
- **not have an atom of sense**: a very small amount of common sense
- **be in one's element**: in a situation one enjoys/in which one does sth very well
- **blind sb with science**: explain sth to sb in a scientific way so that they do not understand
- **nerves of steel**: describing sb who is not afraid in any situation
- **square the circle**: (seemingly) do the impossible
- **cog in the machine**: a person having a small (and unimportant) role in a large organisation
- **do a 180° turn (of attitude)**: to change one's mind completely, reverse one's attitude
- **a mercurial temper**: a very quick temper
- **in the heat of the moment**: in a state of strong emotion, anger or excitement

KEY WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. In this company, nobody's job is regarded as important. (cog)
Everyone is just a this company's concerned.
2. Dad has changed his mind completely and says you can take the car after all. (turn)
Dad and says you can take the car after all.
3. Trapeze artists who perform without a net must have tremendous courage. (nerves)
Trapeze artists without a net.
4. Eric is never happier than when he's out on the lake in his boat. (element)
Eric he's out on the lake in his boat.
5. The negotiator achieved the impossible when he got both sides to meet for talks. (circle)
The negotiator getting both sides to meet for talks.
6. If you peel some potatoes it will get us started. (motion)
You can peeling some potatoes.
7. You just don't think at all, giving a lift to perfect strangers. (sense)
You , giving a lift to perfect strangers.
8. Could you leave out the technical details and tell me how this battery works? (blind)
Without , can you tell me how this battery works?

USE OF ENGLISH

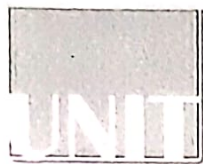
E OPEN CLOZE TEST

TECHNOLOGY

Science and technology are (1) *closely* related. Technology uses the discoveries of science to produce tools, machines and methods (2) may be used in industry, communications, transportation, medicine, warfare and other human activities. (3) turn, the products of technology are often used by scientists (4) further their investigations. Major industries use advanced production techniques (5) as automation, health institutions use laser, beam surgery and, similarly, in most other everyday activities use is made (6) up-to-date scientific knowledge. The electronics, aerospace and national defence industries are generally highly advanced technologically. Agriculture, on the other (7) is a technologically backward industry in most (8) of the world. Even in the most advanced nations, comparatively few farms use all the advanced machines and techniques developed by agricultural technology. The making of tools and machines (9) most of man's history has been the (10) of craftsmen. Their skills have been handed (11) from generation to generation. Progress has often been slow, depending (12) chance discoveries. Until more recently, no attempt was made to ascertain the scientific principles behind various techniques used by craftsmen, and their skills were often considered gifts of the gods. The study of nature which today is the field of science was left to philosophers and religious thinkers, (13) studies and conclusions seldom (14) any relation to practical problems. The Greek philosopher and scientist, Archimedes, was exceptional in that he used his discoveries in physics and mechanics to (15) many useful machines. Until World War II the scientist often worked and studied with no concern for, and often uninformed (16) the problems of everyday life. The technologist used whatever scientific knowledge he found useful but made no attempt to inform scientists of how he was applying the knowledge they discovered.

C GAPPED SENTENCES (WITH COMMON WORD)

1. Dad's in his , marking school books.
When Peter was young, he made a(n) of British butterflies.
Jenny's face was a(n) of concentration during the Latin exam.
2. It was a(n) accident that I should run into Mr Robinson.
Is this water enough to drink?
Jimmy failed his exams because he's bone idle, and simple.
3. Take very good before you shoot at an elephant.
John's in life is to become a teacher.
The of this lesson is to improve pronunciation.
4. The latest of "Hamlet" is one of the best I've seen.
When do you intend to go into with the new books?
You may only enter these doors on of a membership card.
5. My report has been on to the Management Committee.
Thomas has finally in his notice, three months after he said he would.
This antique furniture was down to me by my grandmother.
6. The first time I played on a cricket was when I was ten.
Richard III died on the of battle and was succeeded by Henry Tudor.
What of science do you wish to study at university?



USE OF ENGLISH

JOB INTERVIEWS

Job interviewing is a minefield. Many excellent people have been rejected because of a single faux pas, like having socks which sagged, or being over-familiar with the interviewer. There is no sure-fire trick for being the perfect interviewee, but you can increase your odds by knowing what you're up against. When asked what they want from a job, many candidates dodge the question by giving a generic, safe answer. To make a better impression, you should prepare yourself by writing an "employment ad" that describes your dream job. Include a headline and several adjectives outlining the company, the job and yourself. This forces you to concentrate on exactly what you want and what you have to offer even if the interviewer doesn't ask you.

- line 10 → Something would-be employers are not too keen on hearing is that someone left their last job because they couldn't get on with their boss. This, understandably, puts up a red flag. It is better to concentrate on business reasons for joining a new company. People are often asked why they are switching careers, and to give the reply that you want to try something different can give the impression that you don't know where you're going. Instead, you should explain that your skills, personality and goals are more suited to the new career, or that you want to add something to your experience that will help you achieve a longer-term goal. You should also be careful how you answer the question of where you want to be in 5 years' time. Not having an answer, or having an answer that is inconsistent with the company's own goals are obviously unsatisfactory, and you can also alarm your interviewer by giving the impression that the job is merely a stop-off on the way to something bigger for you. An organisation may fear that, if taken on, such a candidate would spend more time
- line 20 → jockeying for the next position than working.

VOCABULARY - MATCH

1. faux pas
2. over-familiar
3. sure-fire
4. increase one's odds
5. dodge
6. would-be
7. inconsistent
8. stop-off



- a. certain
- b. potential
- c. not matching
- d. too friendly
- e. temporary stop
- f. improve one's chances
- g. avoid
- h. socially embarrassing mistake

Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. Why is it that saying you couldn't get on with your previous boss "puts up a red flag" (line 10)?
.....
2. Explain, in your own words, what the writer means by "jockeying for the next position" (line 20)?
.....



THINK BEFORE YOU SPEAK

One question that many candidates mess up is when they are asked what their greatest achievements are. They tend to talk about responsibilities rather than results, "I wrote the copy, supervised the photography and proof-read the layouts," rather than, "First we looked at the strategy of the company. Then we researched the audience. Then we determined what sort of payback we could achieve...". This answer describes the big picture, not just the activities. Candidates are often asked what their strengths and weaknesses are. Many people try to highlight vague weaknesses that can be viewed as assets. They say, "I'm impatient," hoping the interviewer will see them as a go-getter. Or "I work such long hours that my family hardly ever see me." Therefore you're a dedicated worker. Unfortunately, most interviewers are used to this line and tired of hearing it. Instead, be honest, but emphasise the actions you've taken to deal with a weakness, saying something like "Sometimes I would push back deadlines to turn in higher quality work. However, I've learned to delegate more." As for strengths, you should limit yourself to three examples, all of them showing benefits to the company. line 7

If asked how you think you will get on with your future boss, tell the interviewer that you concentrate on the job and the results, and that you are flexible enough to work with almost anyone. If the question is even more explicit, such as "Describe the worst boss you have ever worked for," couch your answer as a disagreement over a business issue or as a difference in styles - not as a personal dislike. Don't be surprised or annoyed if you are asked how your health is, if you are married or if you have any children. Chances are that the interviewer is really asking how much you are willing to travel or work overtime. line 9

A VOCABULARY - MATCH

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------------|--|
| 1. mess up | <input type="text"/> | a. open/direct |
| 2. strategy | <input type="text"/> | b. spoil, do badly |
| 3. highlight | <input type="text"/> | c. give work to someone else |
| 4. assets | <input type="text"/> | d. emphasise |
| 5. deadlines | <input type="text"/> | e. plan |
| 6. delegate | <input type="text"/> | f. able to change |
| 7. flexible | <input type="text"/> | g. point in time something must be done by |
| 8. explicit | <input type="text"/> | h. something valuable, useful |

B Answer with a word or short phrase.

1. What is your understanding of the word "go-getter" (line 7)?

.....

2. What does "this line" refer to (line 9)?

.....

3. In a paragraph of between 50 and 70 words, summarise in your own words as far as possible, the mistakes an interviewee should avoid during an interview.



You are going to read an extract from a newspaper article. Seven paragraphs have been removed from the extract. Choose from the paragraphs A-H the one which fits each gap (1-7). There is one extra paragraph which you do not need to use.

GIVING HOPE TO THE HOPELESS

As Mrs Pep Atkins approached Lilian Baylis School with her 11-year-old son Glyn, her heart sank. Disappointed by interviews at most of the other secondary schools in the run-down inner-city borough of Lambeth, she already had half a mind to send Glyn to her native Ghana for his education. She saw nothing to lift her spirits in this South London mixed comprehensive, its sprawling, vandalised buildings defaced by graffiti.

1

Her belief was justified. Today, after five years at Lilian Baylis School (named after the determined woman who brought Shakespeare to the Old Vic music hall half a mile away), Glyn is working at a college of further education for A levels in Business Studies, Sociology and Law. He aims to be a barrister. Within a decade Hazel Hardy, now 57, with her deputy heads Daya Moodley and Cliff Stubbs, has turned a blighted, unhappy school, plagued by disruptive pupils, into an exciting educational adventure, universally admired as a showcase of what good teaching can achieve.

2

It was not always like that. When Hazel took over in 1983, she faced a daunting challenge. She had to create the school from scratch, using the dilapidated buildings of Beaufoy, an existing boys' school, and merging its teachers and pupils with those of newly closed Vauxhall Manor school for girls. Parents, pupils, even some teachers, resented the merger. "The children didn't want to be with us," she recalls, "and they let us know it." The school, already damaged, suffered more broken windows. Graffiti spread. Pupils showed little respect for teachers. Truancy soared. "After that first year of indiscipline, anger and vandalism, there was nowhere to go but up."

3

So on a wet winter's night, Hazel Hardy and Daya Moodley, a Hindu from South Africa who has taught for many years in London schools, ventured out to visit the wrongdoers' parents. They were nervous of being mugged in the ill-lit streets, but even more of meeting a hostile response when they told parents their offspring were badly behaved and disruptive.

4

That moment saw the start of Hazel's Family Programme, a unique initiative to involve parents deeply in their children's school work and draw in whole families to study together outside school hours. Says Hazel, "Our vision has been the idealistic concept of the village school - open, welcoming, accessible, days, evenings and weekends."

So successfully has this vision been achieved that in July 1990, Lilian Baylis beat 287 contenders to win the biggest educational award ever to go to a British school: £100,000 top prize from The Jerwood Award, a foundation set up by philanthropic pearl merchant John Jerwood "for an original and significant contribution to the theory and practice of education."

5

Soon they were visiting three homes an evening, twice a week. Over the next five years, they met more than 750 families. If ever Hazel felt like flagging, the memory of one single mother's moving words about her little girl would reinforce her resolve to make the school a source of success. "Look after her for me," the woman said. "She's all I've got."

With parents recruited as valuable allies, the school has become a centre for the whole family. Children at the 51 primary schools that "feed" Lilian Baylis come with their parents to learn what to expect when they move up. "At other schools I visited, you can meet teachers after hours," one visiting primary-school mother told me, "but you really need to see what the pupils are like. I'm very impressed by children here. They don't mumble and hide away - they can carry on a coherent conversation."

6

On the Costain course Mrs Carol Brennan sat with her son and daughter, discovering how to estimate the cost of building a bridge.

"You learn a lot about your children, and they see you as more than just the mum at home who tells them off," she says. "I wish I'd gone to a school like this. At my secondary school, I played truant for a whole year and nobody missed me." Adds her daughter Shani, 12, "Knowing that mum understands what we're doing really makes me want to work."

7

Parents on these courses eat and sometimes sleep at Gurney House, a former education authority residential centre next to the school. I watched Hazel, in trousers and sweatshirt, making stacks of sandwiches and enough ratatouille and cottage pie for 70 adults and 70 children. Daya Moodley, Cliff Stubbs and his wife Veronica, who works at another school, served food and drink, cleared away and washed up. Hazel and her deputies often work a 70-hour week. "The courses really bring results," Hazel told me. "Otherwise I wouldn't do it. I mean, this is hard work. I left home at seven yesterday morning. We stayed the night here and were up at half-past five."

A

Printed big on Hazel's office wall is the motto, "Not failure, but low aim is sin." And behind her friendly manner lies a steely determination to aim high in order to give her pupils a chance in life. Most live in decaying high-rise flats, hemmed in by streets too full of menace to be the playgrounds they once were. "These kids are deprived of too much," she says. "A good education is their only way out, and we're determined that at Lilian Baylis they'll get their fair share."

B

Today's volunteers-former antique dealer Martin Nash, local vicar Andrew Grant and PC Mark Perou, one of several policemen who do a pre-duty stint-listen, encourage and help with the harder words. Over by the wall, two 12-year-old boys sit with backs to the room; one, a good reader, has come in early to help his friend to catch up. Hazel Hardy, not one to ask others to do what she won't do herself, can be seen through the open door of the big, untidy office she calls "Paddington Station," already discussing the day's problems with colleagues.

C

One recent Saturday, in room after room I saw parents squeezed into desks beside young children. Some were learning what kind of English teaching their children could expect in secondary school, others brushing up simple Maths skills or doing pottery and art. Says Glyn Atkins, "The best thing about the Family Programme is that you really have fun while you're working with your parents. What the school tries to create is one big, happy family."

D

Each day in assembly Hazel read the riot act to pupils from a wide range of ethnic backgrounds - Britain, Africa, the West Indies, India, Pakistan, China and Vietnam. No result. Then one morning, desperate, she flung out an angry warning: "Anybody who misbehaves today can expect a visit from me at home tonight." Once the threat was made there was no drawing back.

E

Hazel and Daya got the Family Programme under way by systematically calling on parents of first-year pupils with good news of their children's achievements. They encouraged parents to make a corner for study, to listen to their children reading, supervise writing and spelling practice, and keep a homework diary with space for parents' comments.

F

Then she heard laughter. Inside, instead of a formal interview with a forbidding head teacher, she found a group of parents chatting animatedly. "There was tea and biscuits. And so much laughter." A bouncy blonde woman came forward to introduce herself as Mrs Hazel Hardy, the head. "And it's like she's known me all my life," says Pep Atkins. "With that wonderful welcome and the happy, lively atmosphere, I knew this was the school for my son."

G

Weekend courses attract droves of parents eager to learn what they can do to help with their children's studies. Before last Christmas, children who were promised computers brought along parents for a Saturday lesson from science teacher Rob Bellini on computers that would educate and not simply play games. National supermarket chain Sainsbury's, and engineering and construction firm Costain are two big companies which offer courses, work visits and talks for parents and children.

H

But they underrated the parents. In home after home in Lambeth's densely populated tower blocks, the teachers were invited in, offered food and drink. Parents, aware that life had dealt them a poor hand, were eager to set their children on the road to educational success. As Hazel felt her way down the dark stairway of one block, she said to Daya: "If that's the response we get from bringing bad news about their children, just think what would happen if we brought good news."



UNIT 10

CLAUSES (II)

RELATIVE CLAUSES

A cannibal is a person who goes into a restaurant and orders the waiter.

Jack Benny

A DEFINING

- All the fans **who/that** had tickets were allowed in.
- He went to a party **which/that** was very strange.
- I found the bag (**which/that**) you left in the boot of the car.
- The woman (**who is**) living across the road from us is Tom's teacher.

B NON-DEFINING

- All the fans, who had tickets, were allowed in.
- He went to a party, which was very strange.
- The bag, which you left in the boot of the car, had my passport in it.
- Tom's teacher, who is living across the road from us, is a very nice woman.

C RELATIVE PRONOUNS/ADVERBS & PREPOSITIONS

INFORMAL

- Who am I speaking to?
- Which stop do we get off at?
- He's got a sister **who** has a house with a sauna.
- That's the house (**that**) I was born in.
- That's the house **where** I was born.

FORMAL

- To **whom** am I speaking?
- At **which** stop do we get off?
- He's got a sister **whose** house has a sauna.
- That's the house **in which** I was born.

D ALL SOME } OF NONE } whom which whose

- There were twenty people on the bus, all of whom were tourists.
- The shop had a lot of beautiful rugs, some of which cost over £1,000.
- Into the church walked Raymond, none of whose relatives would speak to him.

E NOUN CLAUSES: THAT

- That it did not rain on the picnic was a miracle. (*subject*)
- I knew **that*** they would be late. (*object*)
- The problem is **that*** there are so few funds.
(*complement of subject*)
- His accusation, **that** I had lied, is without grounds. (*apposition*)
- It is not certain **that*** they will agree. (*complement of adjective*)

** that can be omitted*

F "THAT" REPLACING RELATIVE PRONOUNS/ADVERBS

- It was then **that*** I realised who she was.
- They did everything **that*** they could to help.
- The best thing **that*** you can do is say nothing.
- That's the tenth time today **that*** you've asked me.
- There is one thing **that** worries me about this.
- There are some **that** would disagree with you.

** that can be omitted*

G NOUN CLAUSES: WHAT/WHERE/WHY/HOW...

- What he said intrigued me. (*subject*)
- She did not know **what** to say. (*object*)
- Where he went after that is a mystery. (*subject*)
- They refused to tell us **why** they came late. (*object*)

H WHOEVER/WHATEVER/WHICHEVER...

- **Whoever** said that is an idiot.
- You can buy **whatever** you need.
- Take **whichever** magazine you want.
- You can go **whenever/wherever** you wish.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. The architect designed a house without a kitchen. *The house...*
2. You have a choice of rooms. *You can...*
3. Of all these tombs, where was the king buried? *In...*
4. None of the ten positions I called about were still vacant. *I called...*
5. It was cruel of him to smack his children. *He smacked...*
6. Why he came is a mystery. *No one...*
7. There may be some side effects, but it is not likely. *It is...*
8. She was speechless. *She did not know...*
9. His sudden appearance caused quite a stir. *That...*
10. They've agreed to publish the book, but it may not come out until next summer. *The book,...*

CLAUSES OF TIME

TIME CONJUNCTIONS/ADVERBS

as, as soon/long as, after, before,
by (the time), hardly, immediately,
the moment/minute (that),
no sooner, now (that),
(up)on, once, since,
soon after, the sooner... the...,
till, (not) until, when(ever),
while, only when/after

- ▶ As soon as we (had) reached our seats, the curtain went up.
- ▶ **Upon/On** reaching our seats, the curtain went up.
- ▶ The curtain having gone up, the music began.
- ▶ **The moment** the curtain went/had gone up, the music began.
- ▶ Hardly had the music begun when there was a power cut.
- ▶ **No sooner** had the music begun **than** there was a power cut.
- ▶ It was only when/after the lights came on again that I realised the man next to me was dead.
- ▶ **Not until/Only when/after** the lights came on again did I realise that the man next to me was dead.

CLAUSES OF REASON

as (a result of), because
(of), for, now that,
on account of, due to,
seeing that, since

- ▶ The new measures have led to a drop in crime.
- ▶ A drop in crime has come about **because of** the new measures.
- ▶ The reason why he did not attend the conference was that he was ill.
- ▶ He did not attend the conference **on account of** being ill/his illness.
- ▶ Having no money, we could not go out.
- ▶ **Since we had** no money, we could not go out.
- ▶ He was sacked because he was a careless worker.
- ▶ He was sacked **for being** a careless worker.
- ▶ Not having read the book, how can I comment?
- ▶ **Seeing that I have not** read the book, how can I comment?

LINKING ADVERBIALS: expressing reason

therefore, thus,
so, as, hence,
accordingly,
consequently,
in that case

- ▶ The investigation was called off as it was proving fruitless.
- ▶ The investigation was proving fruitless, **so** it was called off.
- ▶ The investigation was proving fruitless; it was, **therefore**, called off.
- ▶ The investigation was proving fruitless; **consequently**, it was called off.
- ▶ Company sales have fallen. Accordingly, some jobs will have to go.
- ▶ Airports are easy targets for terrorists. Hence the need for stricter security.
- ▶ The press published the minister's remarks, thus forcing him to resign.
- ▶ "It'll take too long sending this by post." "In that case, send it by courier."

ORAL PRACTICE

1. He went straight to the bank after getting paid. **As...**
2. He parked on a double yellow line and was given a ticket. **He received a ticket for...**
3. He made a smaller batch as he didn't have enough ingredients. **Since...**
4. They had just found their seats when the music started. **Hardly...**
5. The entire weekend was spoiled thanks to Debbie and her friends. **On account...**
6. First insert the correct change, then make your selection. **Having...**
7. They couldn't find anyone to sponsor the event. Consequently it was cancelled. **Seeing...**
8. As soon as you arrive, book a return seat. **Immediately...**
9. They couldn't assemble the toy because they lacked the instructions. **Having...**
10. I knew he couldn't be trusted as soon as I laid eyes on him. **The minute...**



UNIT 10

CLAUSES (II)

CLAUSES OF MANNER

HOW/ADVERBS/ADVERBIALS...

- I don't know how you managed to pass your driving test without lessons.
- He spoke confidently and persuasively.
- She makes lemon meringue pie like/ (in) the same way my mother does.
- Do as you are told!
- He treats his staff in a very offhand manner.
- Nick walked into the room with a swagger.
- The clerk looked at me as if/though I was/were an idiot.

SPECIAL TRANSFORMATIONS

- He glanced at her suspiciously. ⇒ *He glanced at her with a suspicious look.*
- I was a bad judge of his character. ⇒ *I completely misjudged his character.*
- His actions were selfless and courageous. ⇒ *He acted selflessly and courageously.*
- The patient limped along the corridor. ⇒ *The patient walked along the corridor with a limp.*
- It was the first time I'd heard her sing like that. ⇒ *She sang in a way that I'd never heard before.*
- It's a Romanesque-like church. ⇒ *The church is built in a Romanesque style.*
- The public was enormously enthusiastic about the new play. ⇒ *The play was received with enormous enthusiasm.*
- He's a very persuasive speaker. { ⇒ *He speaks very persuasively.*
⇒ *He speaks with great persuasion.*
⇒ *He speaks in a very persuasive way/manner.*

CLAUSES OF PLACE

PREPOSITIONS/ ADVERBIALS

- They walked up the hill to the castle.
- It's not here; we'll have to look elsewhere.
- Joan now lives abroad.
- Lenny works a mile from home.

SPECIAL CHANGES

- I left it here. ⇨ *This is where I left it.*
- We've looked everywhere. ⇨ *There is nowhere we have not looked.*
- Wherever you look, there's litter. ⇨ *No matter where you look, there's litter.*
- This species is unique to Asia. ⇨ *Nowhere else but in Asia does this species exist.*
- Poverty is a universal problem. ⇨ *Poverty exists all over the world.*
- It doesn't matter where you leave it. ⇨ *Leave it anywhere you like.*
- Can you tell me which office he is in? ⇨ *Can you direct me to his office?*
- It was my first time in Paris. ⇨ *I'd never been to Paris before.*
- Throw the ball the furthest distance you can. ⇨ *Throw the ball as far as you can.*

ORAL PRACTICE

1. Your recipe for onion soup is the same as mine. *You make...*
2. His tone of voice suggested that I was responsible for the error. *He spoke in...*
3. You can take her children anywhere and they'll never misbehave. *No...*
4. Their handling of the affair was devoid of any tact. *They handled...*
5. Very reluctantly, he boarded the train. *With...*
6. His passion when acting is boundless. *He acts...*
7. His behaviour was disgraceful and unforgivable. *He behaved in...*
8. You'll only find beaches like that in the Maldives. *Nowhere...*
9. You would have thought that I was a child the way he spoke to me! *He spoke...*
10. They were not very enthusiastic about the proposal. *They greeted...*

GRAMMAR ANALYSIS

CLAUSES OF CONTRAST/COMPARISON/CONCESSION & changes in part of speech

while, but
(at least), whilst,
whereas, even (if), by/
in contrast (to),
yet, for all,
on the other hand,
instead...

- He's extremely wealthy, but he is not a happy man.
- **While/Whilst/Even if/though** he is extremely wealthy, he is not a happy man.
- **For all** his wealth, he is not a happy man.
- He's extremely wealthy, **yet** he is not a happy man.
- The north has all the commerce, whereas the south has all the industry.
- The north has all the commerce. The south, **by/in contrast/on the other hand**, has all the industry.
- The north has all the commerce **in contrast to** the south, which has all the industry.
- How can I ask him for help when he won't even speak to me?
- It's very hot here in summer, but at least it is not humid.
- The previous warehouse did not have as much space as the new one.
- The new warehouse is **much more** spacious than the previous one.

- There's little to choose between the two wines. → The two wines are **much of a muchness**.
- Metal doors last longer than wooden ones. → Metal doors are **more durable than** wooden ones.
- The furthest I have ever run is five miles. → **The greatest distance** I have ever run is five miles.
- Craig takes his work more seriously than Andy. → Andy is **less conscientious a worker than** Craig.

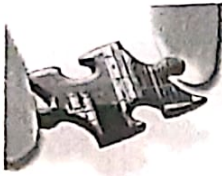
CLAUSES EXPRESSING RESULT

cause, bring about,
result from/in,
lead to, stem/arise
from,
give rise to, be a
consequence of,
come to the
conclusion that,
be responsible for...

- Changing weather patterns caused/led to/resulted in/were responsible for extensive flooding and fires worldwide in 2002.
- **Extensive flooding and fires worldwide in 2002 resulted/stemmed/ arose from/were a consequence of** changing weather patterns.
- Erratic economic policy brought the government down.
- **Erratic economic policy led to** the collapse of the government.
- The nation is so indifferent to the plight of its poor that it came in for international condemnation.
- **National indifference to the plight of its poor led to/resulted in/gave rise to** international condemnation.
- The inconsistencies in his version of the accident led police to believe that he was lying.
- **His version of the accident was so inconsistent that police came to the conclusion that he was lying.**
- She was dismissed for being incompetent.
- **Her incompetence led her to be dismissed/led to her dismissal/being dismissed.**
- Changes in the law were a consequence of the Samson murder trial.
- **The Samson murder trial brought about** changes in the law.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. While he is quite famous, he remains a simple man with simple tastes. **For all...**
2. The water shortage arose from an exceptionally dry winter. **The winter was...**
3. He had an experience as a child which made him claustrophobic. **His claustrophobia seems to be...**
4. The auditorium is large, but the gym has more space. **The gym is...**
5. A military coup brought down the newly-elected government.
The fall of the newly-elected government was...
6. George composed the music, and Ira wrote the lyrics. **Whereas...**
7. He disobeyed the rules and was consequently disqualified. **He was disqualified for...**
8. You may be older than I am, but you are nowhere near as strong. **Even...**
9. The wooden chairs, in contrast to the plastic ones, were built to last a very long time.
The wooden chairs are much...
10. They captured him after an anonymous tip. **An anonymous tip led...**



UNIT 10

PARTICIPLES & OTHER CLAUSE TYPES

A PARTICIPLE CLAUSES

- Who's that girl sitting in the corner? (*relative = who is sitting*)
- The man charged with the crime was well known to the police. (*relative = who was charged*)
- There is a lovely river running through the forest. (*relative = which runs*)
- Walking into the room, she detected a scent of jasmine. (*time = As she walked*)
- Painted, the house will look much nicer. (*time/condition = When/If it is painted*)
- Living in the country, you'd be a lot happier. (*condition = If you lived*)
- Being a model, she has to watch her weight. (*reason = Because she is*)
- Having given his word, he would not go back on it. (*reason = Because he had given*)
- Convicted of murder, he was sentenced to death. (*time/reason = After/Because he had been convicted*)

B INFINITIVES REPLACING RELATIVE CLAUSES

- The roses were the first flowers which bloomed. ⇒ The roses were the first flowers to bloom.
- Ralph is the one who/that you should ask. ⇒ Ralph is the one to ask.

C VERBLESS CLAUSES

- He collapsed on the sofa, too tired for any more work.
- With no money and no job, his future looked bleak.
- Elated by his success, he opened a bottle of champagne.
- Gun in hand, the policeman approached the closed door.
- There were hundreds of fans on the train, most of them Italian.
- The film is a must, especially for anyone keen on history.
- The woman in the shop was very helpful.
- Entry is forbidden to anyone under sixteen.

D CLAUSE SUBSTITUTES

- "Who knows?"
"I do." / "Me." / "Not me."
- "Have you fixed your car yet?"
"Yes, I did it yesterday."
- "Are you going to tell her?"
"I should but I don't think I will."
- "Someone took my book but I don't know who/where/why."

E PARTICIPLES: OTHER USES

- ◇ **as adjectives:** a flying visit, a working relationship, a broken home, a lost cause, etc.
- ◇ **introducing reported statements**
 - He told me that he needed money, adding that it was urgent.
- ◇ **after verbs of the senses**
 - We saw him trying to climb over the wall.
 - I heard a dog howling.
- ◇ **after:** go/come/spend/waste/be busy
 - Robert's going sailing tomorrow and is busy packing.
 - He wasted two hours trying to fix that stupid machine.
- ◇ **after:** catch/find/leave/keep
 - The manager caught two staff members stealing.
 - I found the dog chewing my shoe.
 - Mark left her wondering what she should do next.
 - Keep the car running while I pop into the shop.
- ◇ **after:** have (causative form)
 - She had her car resprayed.
 - Stuart's an excellent coach; he'll have you swimming in no time.

ORAL PRACTICE

- He's allowed to use the facilities because he's a member. *Being...*
- On retiring from the navy, he bought a cottage by the sea. *When...*
- Sandy arrived before anyone else. *Sandy was...*
- The police were stopping any car that had foreign number plates. *Any car with...*
- When I arrived they were seated at the table and having dinner. *I found them...*
- They work well together. *They have...*
- He found the film depressing, so he walked out of the cinema. *Depressed...*
- I heard a gunshot in the distance so I called the police. *Having...*
- He withdrew from the race as he had no chance of winning. *With...*
- She stormed into the office, holding the papers in her hand. *Papers...*

EMPHATIC FORMS

A CLEFT SENTENCES

- 1 I need money, not advice.
 - ⇒ **It's money that I need, not advice.**
 - ⇒ **What I need is money, not advice.**
 - ⇒ **Money is what I need, not advice.**
 - ⇒ **The thing I need most is money, not advice.**

place

- 1 The accident happened here.
 - ⇒ **This is where the accident happened.**
 - ⇒ **It's here that the accident happened.**
 - {⇒ **Where the accident happened was here.**}

time

- 1 You should go in March.
 - ⇒ **March is when you should go.**
 - ⇒ **It's in March that you should go.**
 - {⇒ **When you should go is in March.**}

B WHAT/IT

- 1 I was amazed by his nerve to ask for money.
 - ⇒ **What amazed me was his nerve to ask for money.**
- 1 There's nothing I like more than to watch the sunset from my balcony.
 - ⇒ **What I like most is to watch the sunset from my balcony.**
- 1 The high winds caused them to cancel the ferry.
 - ⇒ **It was because of the high winds that they cancelled the ferry.**
- 1 The thing for you to do is join a club.
 - ⇒ **What you should do is join a club.**
- 1 You must have gone to the wrong office.
 - ⇒ **It must have been the wrong office that you went to.**
- 1 The cost is immaterial. ⇒ **It doesn't matter what it costs.**
- 1 I assume that you'll be at the meeting.
 - ⇒ **I take it that you will be at the meeting.**
- 1 Living here is great. ⇒ **It's great living here.**

C QUESTION WORDS

- 1 How he did it, I'll never know.
- 1 Why he said that escapes me.
- 1 Where I really wanted to go was India.
- 1 Who was it who told you?
- 1 Whoever took your keys, it was not me.

D CHANGE OF EMPHASIS

- 1 Kate spotted him in the street yesterday.



- It was Kate who spotted him in the street yesterday.*
- It was him Kate spotted in the street yesterday.*
- It was in the street that Kate spotted him yesterday.*
- It was yesterday that Kate spotted him in the street.*

E OTHER EMPHATIC FORMS

- 1 All I know is that he was arrested. I don't know what for.
- 1 They promised me a sea view but all I could see was the street.
- 1 I'm not in the least bit worried./I'm not worried in the slightest.
- 1 I do hope you'll be able to join us at the weekend.
- 1 She wanted to have a wild party and boy, did she!
- 1 He gave me no help at all/whatsoever.
- 1 You've been very helpful indeed; thank you.
- 1 That's the very thing I'm afraid of.
- 1 It was his own money; he didn't steal it.
- 1 That he will agree is unlikely.

ORAL PRACTICE

1. My computer has a built-in fax and modem, which is very useful. *It's...*
2. I wasn't surprised that she resigned, but that she took so long to do it. *What...*
3. We stayed there last year, too. *That...*
4. I find the fact that they gave us no notice very annoying. *What...*
5. Working down the mines all those years caused him to have health problems. *It was...*
6. The only thing in sight was a factory. *All I...*
7. His reasons for refusing to answer my question escape me. *Why he...*
8. The first thing you should do is consult a lawyer. *What...*
9. From whom did you get this information? *Who was...*
10. She could have been referring to her ex-husband. *It...*



UNIT 10

CHANGES & REPHRASING

VERB → VERB + NOUN

HAVE

- affect/interest/suspect/trust ⇒ have an effect on/interest in/a suspicion that/trust in
- argue/fight/meet/discuss ⇒ have an argument/fight/meeting/discussion
- choose/intend/fear/control/know/feel ⇒ have (a) choice/intention/fear of/control/knowledge/feeling
- like/hate/crave/admire/prefer ⇒ have (a) fondness/liking/hatred/craving/admiration/preference for

PUT

- enforce ⇒ put into effect
- forget ⇒ put behind
- ruin/spoil ⇒ put paid to
- stop ⇒ put a stop to
- tax/pressure/identify ⇒ put a tax/pressure/one's finger on

BEAR

- have sth against ⇒ bear a grudge
- pay (for) ⇒ bear the cost/expense (of)
- relate (to) ⇒ bear (a) relation (to)
- resemble ⇒ bear a resemblance (to)
- succeed ⇒ bear fruit
- support ⇒ bear the weight of

DO

- damage/injure ⇒ do damage/injury (to)
- imitate ⇒ do an imitation
- research ⇒ do research in/into

EXPRESS

- regret/thank/want/long for
- express one's regret/gratitude/desire/longing for

MAKE

- decide/complain/compare/suggest/ask/contribute

make

a decision/complaint/comparison/suggestion/request/contribution

SUFFER

- lose/injure/defeat/damage

suffer

a/the loss/injuries/defeat/damage

ADJECTIVE → IDIOMS/EXPRESSIONS

- broke ⇒ hard up/not have a penny to one's name
- busy ⇒ on the go
- deaf ⇒ hard of hearing
- impossible ⇒ out of the question
- likely ⇒ on the cards
- mad ⇒ off one's head

- nervous ⇒ on edge
- old ⇒ past (its) prime/over the hill/getting on/out of date
- poor/destitute ⇒ down and out
- practical/realistic ⇒ down to earth
- rich ⇒ well-to-do
- slow/stupid ⇒ slow on the uptake

- strict ⇒ hard on
- tired ⇒ worn out
- uncomfortable ⇒ ill at ease
- unhappy ⇒ down in the mouth
- upset/rebellious ⇒ up in arms
- worried ⇒ beside oneself
- embarrassed ⇒ red in the face

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. She is craving some chocolate-covered cherries. (*has*)
She chocolate-covered cherries.
2. There are many colours to choose from. (*choice*)
You many colours.
3. He lost most of his books in the fire. (*suffered*)
He in the fire.
4. The factory workers were upset about the planned budget cuts. (*arms*)
The factory workers budget cuts.
5. She doesn't feel comfortable with strangers. (*ill*)
She strangers.
6. Andrew contributed invaluablely to the fund-raising event for charity. (*made*)
Andrew fund-raising event for charity.
7. Try and forget the whole experience or it will upset you and your family. (*put*)
Try and it will upset you and your family.
8. I think his experiments will succeed this time. (*fruit*)
I think this time.
9. She damaged the car badly when she backed into the tree. (*did*)
She when she backed into the tree.
10. He said he longed for the tastes and smells of his native land. (*expressed*)
He of his native land.

CHANGES & REPHRASING

VERB ⇨ PHRASAL VERB

attribute to ⇒ put down to
complete ⇒ get through
continue ⇒ go on
deduct ⇒ take off
despise ⇒ look down on
discern ⇒ make out
discontinue ⇒ break off
expire ⇒ run out
learn ⇒ pick up
mention ⇒ bring/come up
perform/execute ⇒ carry out
pester ⇒ keep on at
postpone ⇒ put off
proceed ⇒ go ahead with
recover ⇒ get over
refuse ⇒ turn down
require ⇒ call for
resemble ⇒ take after
return ⇒ put back
show ⇒ point out
support ⇒ back up
withdraw ⇒ back out
withstand ⇒ stand up to
yield ⇒ give in

PHRASAL VERB ⇨ PHRASAL VERB/IDIOM

allow for ⇒ take into account
blow up ⇒ go up (in flames)
break up ⇒ go (their) separate ways
bring round ⇒ talk into
close down ⇒ go out of business
come across ⇒ stumble on
do away with ⇒ get rid of
draw up ⇒ come to a halt
fall back on ⇒ rely on
fall in with ⇒ agree to
fall through ⇒ come to nothing
get away ⇒ take time off
give oneself up ⇒ turn oneself in
give up ⇒ cut out
give up ⇒ throw in the towel
hand down ⇒ pass on
hang/hold on to ⇒ keep hold of
hold off ⇒ keep back/at bay
keep in with ⇒ stay on good terms with
knock off ⇒ call it a day
look down on ⇒ turn one's nose up at
make up ⇒ bury the hatchet
make up for ⇒ make amends for
move up ⇒ climb the ladder
pick up ⇒ call for
pull down ⇒ raze to the ground
ring off ⇒ hang up
run through ⇒ use up
see to ⇒ take care of/look after
send for ⇒ call in
show sb up ⇒ put sb to shame
show up ⇒ stand out
stand by ⇒ side with/stick up for
take in ⇒ pull the wool over sb's eyes
take off/start ⇒ get off the ground
think over ⇒ give (it) some thought (to)
try out ⇒ give sth/it a go/whirl
turn in ⇒ hit the sack/hay
watch out for ⇒ be on the lookout for/
keep an eye out for
wind up ⇒ bring to an end/draw to a close

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- Don't you think it's time you went to bed, David? (*turned*)
Don't you , David?
- Was my name mentioned? (*up*)
Did name?
- It's a shame to quit now that you have come so far. (*towel*)
Don't have come so far.
- It took a lot of time and effort to get Ron's new business started. (*off*)
It took a lot of time and effort ground.
- I could just discern the figure of a man through the fog. (*make*)
I could just through the fog.
- These old laws should be abolished. (*done*)
These with.
- I was completely taken in by his hard-luck story. (*wool*)
He completely his hard-luck story.
- Philip is lucky to have his parents to turn to for financial help. (*back*)
Philip is lucky to have his parents help.
- It's such a shame that Terry and Carla broke up. (*separate*)
If only ways.
- Judy's thinking about moving to France. (*thought*)
Judy's France.
- I'm tired; let's knock off now, Paul. (*day*)
I'm tired; , Paul.
- Our plans to visit Jamaica this summer have fallen through again. (*nothing*)
Our plans to visit Jamaica again.



UNIT 10

CHANGES & REPHRASING

SPECIAL CASES (I)

- | | |
|---|--|
| • She talks about nothing but food. | ⇒ Food is her sole topic of conversation. |
| • He thought it appropriate to retire. | ⇒ He saw fit to retire. |
| • You don't have to pay for it. | ⇒ There's no charge for it. |
| • I can't imagine why she came. | ⇒ I haven't the slightest/faintest/remotest idea why she came. |
| • Have a quick look at this. | ⇒ Cast an eye over this. |
| • She was sent to prison for one year. | ⇒ She was given a one-year prison sentence. |
| • He's very busy. | ⇒ He has his hands full. |
| • It is my opinion that... | ⇒ As far as I can see... |
| • He suffers from feelings of inadequacy. | ⇒ He's prey to feelings of inadequacy. |
| • She aims to become director. | ⇒ She has set her sights on becoming director. |
| • You don't have to do military service. | ⇒ You're exempt from military service. |
| • I think I was right to leave. | ⇒ I have no regrets about leaving. |
| • He did the maths problem in seconds. | ⇒ He found a/the solution to the maths problem in seconds. |
| • It was acceptable to all/everybody. | ⇒ Nobody raised an objection (to it). |
| • Your stress is self-inflicted. | ⇒ Your stress is of your own making. |
| • When (winter) began... | ⇒ At the onset of (winter)... |
| • These shoes no longer fit her. | ⇒ She has grown out of her shoes. |
| • She catches colds easily. | ⇒ She's susceptible to colds. |
| • To a certain extent... | ⇒ In some respects... |
| • (Your birthday) coincides with... | ⇒ (Your birthday) is on the same day as... |
| • You'll find this very useful. | ⇒ This will come in handy. |
| • The permit expires on 1st May. | ⇒ The permit is valid until 1st May/The permit runs out on 1st May.
The expiry date of/for the permit is 1st May. |

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

- The burglar was sent to prison for six months. (a)
The burglar sentence.
- With six children to look after, she's extremely busy. (hands)
With six children full.
- There are several categories of people who do not have to pay the new tax. (exempt)
There are several categories the new tax.
- He talked about nothing but the weather. (sole)
His weather.
- In the end, I felt I had been right to leave the club. (regrets)
In the end, the club.
- Their problems are all self-inflicted, if you ask me. (making)
Their problems, if you ask me.
- It is my opinion that there is no advantage in further discussion. (see)
As no advantage in further discussion.
- The proposals are acceptable to everybody. (raised)
Nobody proposals.
- This licence is valid until 31st December, 2012. (expiry)
The 31st December, 2012.
- The Prime Minister felt it appropriate to make a statement. (fit)
The Prime Minister statement.
- He did the puzzle in two minutes. (solution)
He the puzzle in two minutes.
- That jumper you knitted for my daughter no longer fits her. (grown)
My daughter for her.

SPECIAL CASES (II)

- His health is improving.
- He was quite frank about it.
- They have stored their belongings.
- Only the state can own land.
- The elderly come first/before anyone else.
- He has been made redundant.
- It was not (very) successful.
- She doesn't agree with me.
- Spinach contains a lot of iron.
- Remember the homeless at Christmas.
- Prices may vary.
- They meet on alternate Fridays.
- It's far from perfect.
- He often gets/suffers from...
- He was determined to stay.
- That's all I have to say.
- You should make the most of your free time.
- It doesn't matter how old you are, you need a ticket.
- She looks just like her mother.
- He never stops asking questions.
- I don't care any more.
- Few people have access to this information.
- He ran the 100 metres faster than anyone in the world.
- She said nothing because she did not want an argument.

- ⇒ His health is showing signs of improvement.
- ⇒ He made no secret of it.
- ⇒ They have put their belongings into storage.
- ⇒ The state has a monopoly on land ownership.
- ⇒ The elderly have/take priority over everyone else.
- ⇒ He has lost his job.
- ⇒ It met with no/little success.
- ⇒ She doesn't share my views/opinions/ideas.
- ⇒ Spinach has a very high iron content.
- ⇒ Spare a thought for the homeless at Christmas.
- ⇒ Prices are subject to change.
- ⇒ They meet every other Friday.
- ⇒ It has its shortcomings.
- ⇒ He is prone to...
- ⇒ He had no intention of leaving.
- ⇒ There's nothing I can add.
- ⇒ You should put your free time to good use.
- ⇒ Everyone needs a ticket, irrespective/regardless of age.
- ⇒ She's the spitting image of her mother.
- ⇒ There's no limit to the number of questions he asks.
- ⇒ I'm past caring.
- ⇒ This is privileged information.
- ⇒ He holds/broke the world record for the 100 metres.
- ⇒ For the sake of peace, she said nothing.

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. The employment scheme proved to be unsuccessful after all. (*met*)
The employment after all.
2. Terry did not agree with me about the best way to proceed. (*share*)
Terry did not to proceed.
3. While I'm abroad I intend storing my furniture with a local removal firm. (*put*)
While I'm abroad I intend a local removal firm.
4. It seems highly unlikely that the weather will improve during the next few days. (*shows*)
The weather the next few days.
5. Skimmed milk contains very little fat. (*content*)
The low.
6. The open-air concerts in the park take place on alternate Sundays. (*other*)
The open-air concerts Sunday.
7. Don't forget those at work on this lovely, sunny day! (*thought*)
Spare lovely, sunny day!
8. John was quite frank about his criminal record. (*secret*)
John criminal record.
9. People who are seriously ill are seen before other patients. (*priority*)
People who are other patients.
10. Our bus timetable may vary from one month to the next. (*subject*)
Our bus timetable change.
11. Ours is the only company allowed to import these chemicals. (*monopoly*)
Our company of these chemicals.
12. There have been a lot of redundancies in that area. (*jobs*)
A lot of area.

CLAUSES, CLEFT SENTENCES, VOCABULARY

A "KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. Doesn't anyone but me care about this issue? (*only*)
Am I this issue?
2. I'm particularly looking forward to visiting the Taj Mahal when I'm in India. (*is*)
What visiting the Taj Mahal when I'm in India.
3. I firmly believed Mark to be telling the truth. (*my*)
It was the truth.
4. The colour photography was the best part of the film for me. (*most*)
What I the colour photography.
5. The number of places offered on the course has been drastically reduced owing to lack of funds. (*le*)
Lack of funds the number of places offered on the course.
6. I was amazed at the speed with which Chris learned to drive. (*how*)
I found drive.
7. I can't accept your explanation at all, Janet. (*find*)
I , Janet.
8. John's illness lasted for three months. (*was*)
It had.
9. He'll settle down and then his performance will improve. (*settles*)
Once will improve.
10. My decision to get up and dance coincided with the band's decision to stop playing. (*moment*)
The , the band decided to stop playing.
11. The fate of the two climbers is unknown. (*mystery*)
It is a climbers.
12. I don't know which way he'll be coming, but he should be here by this evening. (*comes*)
Whichever by this evening.
13. Owing to a traffic accident, he arrived late. (*due*)
His late accident.
14. I should like someone to take me out to dinner. (*is*)
What out to dinner.
15. He did not care for parties, perhaps because he was shy. (*of*)
Perhaps because parties.

USE OF ENGLISH

GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

"KEY" WORD TRANSFORMATION

1. Nobody approved of Harry's behaviour. (*meet*)
Harry's approval.
2. The Minister resigned because of errors in his department. (*brought*)
The Minister's in his department.
3. The new model is very similar to the old one. (*bears*)
The new model old one.
4. Several flights have had to be cancelled because of heavy snowfalls. (*resulted*)
Heavy snowfalls flights.
5. The committee is trying to resolve its financial problems. (*solution*)
The committee financial problems.
6. The coach's tactics were directly responsible for the team's defeat. (*consequence*)
The team's defeat the coach's tactics.
7. The athlete's hopes of an international career were dashed by an accident during training. (*paid*)
An accident of an international career.
8. The cause of the explosion is still unknown. (*caused*)
What a mystery.
9. That was such a serious crime that he deserves the maximum penalty. (*so*)
For he deserves the maximum penalty.
10. The fact that nobody said anything at the time surprised me. (*was*)
What anything at the time.
11. The one the judges chose was Mary. (*who*)
It chose.
12. The furthest I have ever swum is a mile. (*greatest*)
The a mile.
13. I don't know if James can speak French; I've never put that question to him. (*asked*)
Never, I don't know if James can speak French.
14. Nobody knows what happened to the money. (*mystery*)
It the money.
15. It took three hours to get there, but we all agreed we were happy we had done it. (*worth*)
Although it took three hours to get there, it.



UNIT 10

CONNECTORS - MODIFIERS & expressions

SEQUENCE

in the first place, at the beginning, first of all, at first, for one thing, to begin with, secondly, in the second place, in addition to (that), apart from (that), moreover, furthermore, what is more, besides, yet, and also, not only... but also, finally, lastly, eventually, at/in the end, at last, in the last resort, in conclusion, to sum up

- *He's not suitable for the job at all.*

To begin with, he doesn't even speak a foreign language.

DRAWING ATTENTION/EMPHASISING

let alone, not to mention, needless to say, in particular, above all, as everyone knows, especially, clearly, obviously, chiefly, primarily, of course, as it is/as it does

- *You'd feel healthier if you gave up smoking, not to mention the money you would save.*

EXCEPTIONS

but not, apart from, except for, other than, bar, with the exception of, instead of, not counting

- *Other than Pete, who else stood up to Mr Hines when he started threatening the class?*

POSSIBILITY

on the off-chance, in case, in the event of, in this/the eventuality/the eventuality that

- *On the off-chance that you run into Mr Hoad, don't forget to thank him for the party.*

REPHRASING

in other words, that is to say, which means that

- *It was just another routine day. In other words, I went to work and came home again.*

WHAT IS/APPEARS TO BE TRUE/FACTUAL

in effect, indeed, at first sight, in fact, in practice/theory, for all practical purposes, to all intents and purposes, on the face of it, as a matter of fact, the fact of the matter is that

- *On the face of it, she seems very reasonable but she'll pick you up on any small mistake.*

RESERVATIONS/LIMITING MEANING

to some/a certain/any extent, up to a point, in a way, in a sense, as far as I know, for all I know, at any rate, to the best of my knowledge, things being as they are, at all events, anyway, in these circumstances, in any case

- *To the best of my knowledge, Jeffrey said he'd see about contacting the rest of them.*

BEING ABSOLUTE

once and for all, (no/not...) whatsoever, at all

- *There is no doubt whatsoever that we will win the coming elections.*

TIME REFERENCES

from day to day, every now and then, on the occasion of, most times, at some time, in the time of, in time, meanwhile, by the time/end, since, in the aftermath, in retrospect, just as/now/before, at present, up to now, to date, the instant, after, before, as, once, while, whenever, afterwards, then, prior to, by

- *In the aftermath of the storm, the number of yachts sunk was put at over 350.*

RELATED/CONFUSING WORDS & PHRASES

AT THE TOP

peak, record, heyday,
height, summit, head,
pitch, crest, crown,
highest, uppermost,
tip, climax, zenith

- on top of a situation
- at a record level
- summit conference
- reach a peak
- in sth's/sb's heyday
- come to a head
- at the peak of (one's career, fitness)
- at the height of
- at fever pitch

GOALS

aim, target, sights,
object, end, strive

- long-term goal
- on target
- object of the exercise
- achieve one's aim/goal
- miss/overshoot a target
- means to an end
- take aim
- set one's sights on
- strive for/towards

SPEED

rate, tempo, velocity,
pace, swift, rapid, fast,
speedy, hasty, brisk,
quick

- at speeds of
- at a brisk pace
- fast and furious
- hasty retreat/decision
- at a steady/an alarming rate
- keep pace with, set the pace
- hard and fast
- quick (to do sth)
- gain/lose velocity
- swift of foot
- speedy recovery/reply

POWER/FORCE

steam, strength,
energy, might, brawn

- spending power
- a show of strength/force
- with all one's might
- in full force
- trial of strength
- all brawn and no brains
- run out of steam
- energy crisis

SUPPRESS

smother, stifle, choke,
drown, suffocate,
stunt, quench

- suppress one's laughter
- drown one's sorrows/the words
- stifle a yawn
- stunt one's growth
- choke on sth/to death
- quench one's thirst

SUGGEST

insinuate, infer, imply,
hint, indicate, surmise

- at sb's suggestion
- imply that; by implication
- every indication
- infer from/that
- hint at/that; take a hint
- surmise that
- draw/make an inference

INJURIES/SYMPTOMS

swollen, hoarse,
twisted, strained,
pulled, aching, rash,
torn, dislocated,
flu, infected, cold

- swollen face/feet, etc.
- strain one's back/eyes/vocal cords
- come/break out in/get a rash
- come/go down with flu
- hoarse voice
- pulled muscle
- torn muscles/ligaments
- infected tooth, wound
- twisted ankle
- aching back/tooth
- dislocated shoulder
- bad/heavy cold



UNIT 10

GREEK PREFIXES

PERICLES' DILEMMA

To *paraphrase* the dilemma of Pericles, our *antisocial*, *anti-smoking*, *monolingual anti-hero*, he needed a wife. A *symbol* of the *sympathetic* companion, a *symphony* of light and love, a *photogenic* beauty, a *paragon* of virtue - in short his *antithesis*. To attract such a woman he needed a new image. Sporting a *monocle* and piloting a *monoplane*, his *peripatetic* odyssey took him all over Greece until he met fair Aspasia. His friends noticed the *metamorphosis* and chuckled at the *paradox* of Pericles entering into a *dialogue* with someone, instead of his usual *monologue*, and without his usual *antagonism*. Soon they married - he for love, she for social respectability. They were *diametrically* opposed and presently she became tired of the way he *monopolised* their *monotonous* lives. She murdered him cleverly by putting *antifreeze* into his *amphora* of *retsina*. She *microwaved* his remains and buried them in the garden. Luckily, he was obligingly *biodegradable* and *disintegrated* without delay. A cruel murder - but surely a *symptom* of our barbarous times.

PREFIXES	MEANING	EXAMPLES
a-	without, not, lacking in	amoral, anarchy, atheist
amphi-, amph-	both, on both sides/kinds, around, on all sides	amphibious, amphitheatre, amphora
ana-	upwards, backwards, throughout, according to	anachronism, analogue, anathema, anagram
anti-, ant-	opposite, against, hostility	antidote, antibody, anti-smoking, anticlimax, antifreeze, antisocial, antistatic, antithesis, antonym, antagonism
apo-	away from, off	apostrophe, apocalypse, apostle, apocryphal
bio-	life	biology, biosphere, biochemistry, biography, biodegradable, biogenesis, bionic, biopsy, biorhythm
cata-	down (from), according to, against	catalogue, catastrophe, catalytic, catapult, cataclysm
di-	two, twice, double	dilemma, dioxide, divide, dichotomy
dia-	through(out), across, apart, mutually, in different directions	diagonal, dialysis, dialogue, diaphragm, diagnosis, dialect, diameter, diatribe
el-, em-, en-	in, into, within	ellipsis, empathy, emphasis, encyclopedia, endemic
epl-	on, upon, over, above, to, close to, besides, in addition to	epitaph, epicentre, epicure, epilepsy, epilogue
hyper-	over, above, in great amount, to an excessive degree	hypertension, hypersensitive, hyperventilate
hypo-	below, beneath, at a lower point	hypothesis, hypocrite, hypodermic, hypothermia
macro-	big, large	macroeconomics, macrosystem
mega-	big, large	megaphone, megacycle, megalomania, megahertz
meta-	behind, backward, changed, alternating	metaphor, metamorphosis, metastasis, metabolism
micro-	small	microscope, microbiology, microphone, microchip, microsurgery, microwave
mono-	one, single	monolingual, monocle, monolithic, monologue, monogram, monopolise, monotony, monoxide
para-	near, beside, beyond, among, alongside	paragraph, paradox, parable, parallel, paraphernalia, paralyse, parameter, paranoia, paraphrase, parasite
peri-	around, about, near	perimeter, periscope, period
poly-	many, more than one	polygamy, polyglot, polyphonic, polytechnic, polytheism
pro-	before, forward, in front of	prophecy, prologue, prognosis, programme
pros-	near, to, towards, at	prosthetic, proselytise
sym-, syn-	together, with	symbol, sympathy, symphony, symptom, synonym, synopsis, syntax, synthesis

LATIN PREFIXES

CLAUDIUS, MY ADORED ONE

Even **admitting** that my husband Claudius is an **illogical**, **inarticulate**, **miserable**, **extravagant**, **irresponsible**, **introverted** simpleton, I nevertheless adore and admire him. Neither his **bigamous** ways nor his **contrary** personality have ever vexed me, and his **counterfeit** smile and **counter-productive** suggestions I have always found amusing. Nothing will deter me from being the consummate wife. I will **adhere** to him and **accompany** him, praising his **accomplishments**, should there be any, and **assuring** him of a joyous home life. I will never **invade** his privacy nor **interrogate** him when he arrives home **intoxicated**, only to collapse in the **adjacent** bedroom. You may not **comprehend** my noble posture, but I **implore** you to **congratulate** me on it. I am a wife among wives.

PREFIXES	MEANING	EXAMPLES
ad- (ac-, ag-, al-, an-, as-, at-)	to, towards, proximity, increase, dependence, relationship	adhere, advent, adjacent, adjunct, addict, addition, adjoin, adjust, account, accelerate, accomplish, assure, accommodate, accompany, aggregate, allocate
ante-	before, previous to, in front of	antecedent, antenatal, antedate, ante-room
bi-	two, twice	binocular, bicycle, bilateral, bilingual, biannual, biennial, bigamy, bifocals
circum-	around, about	circumference, circumspect, circumvent, circumstance
com- (con-, co-, col-, cor-)	together, with, jointly, mutually, mentally	compose, comprehend, compensate, commerce, concentrate, coordinate, collaborate, correspond
contra- (contro-)	counter, against, opposing, in contrast to	contradiction, controversial, counter-productive, counterfeit
de-	reversal, removal, down, off, away (from)	decode, decapitate, descend, deter, debase, decrease, decompose, declassify, decline, deduce, deflate
dis- (dif-, di-)	apart, away, not, lack, rejection, removal, deprivation, negation	dismiss, dismantle, disparage, discard, disengage, disrupt, disable, disassemble, different, divulge, digest
extra- (extro-)	outside, beyond, very, to an exceptional degree	extract, extra-judicial, extraordinary, extreme, extravagant, extraterrestrial, extrovert
in- (im-, il-, -ir)	not	inaccessible, indifferent, inarticulate, impotent, illogical, irrefutable, irresponsible, irreversible
in-, im-, inter-, intro-	in, in a certain state, between, together, within, on the inside	ingest, inflame, invest, invade, interchange, internal, interpose, interrogate, implode, introspective, introvert
mis-	bad, wrong, ill	misunderstand, misdeed, miserable, misconduct
multi-	many, more than one	multilingual, multimedia, multiply
post-	after, behind	postpone, posterior, postgraduate, posthumous
pre-	before	prevent, predate, predict, precaution
re-, retro-	again, back, backward	reserved, recognise, retrospect, retrograde
semi-	half, part(ly)	semicircle, semi-conscious, semicolon, semifinal
sub-	under, below	submarine, subconscious, subculture, substandard
super-	over	supersensitive, superstition, superhuman, superiority, superintendent
trans-	across	transport, transcontinental, transparent, transmit, transplant, transactional
ultra-	excessive, extremely, to excess	ultra-sensitive, ultra-soft, ultra-fine



EXTRA CPE EXAM PRACTICE

PART 1

For questions 1-18, read the three texts below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap.

WRITING

The most important sign system ever invented on our planet is writing. Some may disagree and point out that speech, (1)....., is a sign system too, and one which is clearly more important than writing. Such an objection, however, (2)..... the point. Whether or not speech is a product of nature or of the human mind has been (3)..... debated since early times, but there is general agreement that writing is an artefact. Many linguists believe that people are born to speak, a belief strongly supported by the fact that there is no (4)..... society which lacks speech. If we ever find one, which has (5)..... anthropologists' attention so far, then we would be forced to alter our (6)..... of humanity drastically, or else to exclude that society from our species.

- | | | | | |
|----|--------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. | a. meanwhile | b. by the way | c. furthermore | d. after all |
| 2. | a. loses | b. misses | c. sidesteps | d. dodges |
| 3. | a. hotly | b. tightly | c. sharply | d. firmly |
| 4. | a. notable | b. renowned | c. notorious | d. known |
| 5. | a. diverted | b. passed | c. escaped | d. slipped |
| 6. | a. belief | b. conception | c. grasp | d. hold |

A SUCCESSFUL MAGAZINE

We are a dynamic magazine, Living Abroad, which is immensely popular and soaring to new (7)..... It's an exciting ride. As the magazine establishes itself as a (8)..... lifestyle and recruitment player in an increasingly competitive marketplace, we are looking to expand our sales force. But you need to be a very special type of person. If you are experienced and have a (9)..... record in media sales, are very hardworking, thrilled by a challenge and have unlimited (10)..... and enthusiasm, you may just be considered for an interview.

We are looking for an outstanding person, who can sell advertising space over and over again with tenacity and panache. If you can (11)..... to the challenge, and have specific goals in life which include success and great rewards, come and meet us face-to-face and convince us that you've got the (12)..... of a valuable team member.

- | | | | | |
|-----|-------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| 7. | a. heights | b. peaks | c. summits | d. crests |
| 8. | a. key | b. ruling | c. focal | d. crucial |
| 9. | a. worthy | b. tested | c. set | d. proven |
| 10. | a. surge | b. shove | c. drive | d. dash |
| 11. | a. leap | b. meet | c. rise | d. equal |
| 12. | a. findings | b. doings | c. workings | d. makings |

COACHING

When we think of coaching, we may well think of someone in a tracksuit shouting through a megaphone at a group of runners in the rain. However, nowadays coaching has probably never enjoyed a better (13)..... in the UK, with sports coaches being brought over from various countries to transform a team's fortunes. Even some businesses are beginning to see the (14)..... of coaching, both for themselves as corporate (15)....., and for individual employees or departments.

Coaching in a personal or business (16)..... is concerned with change and development. Coaches can help identify (17)..... of behaviour, or obstacles that are preventing people from achieving their (18)..... But coaches don't necessarily provide definitive answers – they try to help clients find their own solutions.

- | | | | | |
|-----|---------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 13. | a. report | b. press | c. broadcast | d. publication |
| 14. | a. returns | b. improvements | c. benefits | d. profits |
| 15. | a. items | b. units | c. objects | d. entities |
| 16. | a. background | b. context | c. reference | d. condition |
| 17. | a. orders | b. plans | c. designs | d. patterns |
| 18. | a. prospect | b. competence | c. capacity | d. potential |



EXTRA CPE EXAM PRACTICE

PART 2

You are going to read four extracts which are all concerned in some way with popular culture. For questions 19-26, choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

A WRITER'S DILEMMA

When a writer puts pen to paper there is always a tension between those attempts by the writer to explain himself, to retain the integrity of what is to be communicated, and the endeavour to create mass appeal. Those who remain too arcane or self-indulgent have no audience. On the other hand, those who try solely to please the audience have nothing to say. The idea that great works of literature will always find an audience is simply wishful thinking or a romantic dream that even a quick history of publishing would dispel. However intensely thought out, a book will not convey its message until it finds an audience willing to listen.

Popular fiction, however, is based on the assumption that the audience is understood. Whilst it takes certain types of people to produce it, and whilst many try and fail, the appeal rests on having designs on the response of the reader. Given the recognition of what readers are looking for, the idea is to gratify them as simply and as unselfconsciously as possible. This suggests that there is nothing sacrosanct about the text. If it succeeds in its own terms, this is enough. Its own terms are only that, by its very lack of uniqueness, it fulfills a certain formula of popularity.

19. According to the text, which belief would past events show to be a misconception?
- A book's merit will guarantee readership.
 - Books are written with a particular audience in mind.
 - There are very few books that communicate new ideas.
 - Highly specialised books have limited interest for most people.
20. According to the text, a popular novel is one that
- appeals to people with a range of different outlooks.
 - conforms to the reader's expectations.
 - is written in a style that is easily acquired.
 - avoids any issue that generates controversy.

CLINT EASTWOOD'S HEROES

Clint Eastwood has taken the presentation of the heroic male into country he had not previously explored. Since director Howard Hawkes placed it at the centre of his adventure films, male bonding has been a great recurring motif in American movies, but it is rarely in Eastwood's. His great theme has been the opposite: the difficulty men have in making connections with any sort of community. Eastwood's heroes are not even granted the kind of relationship with women that Hawkes permitted in his protagonists. In most of Eastwood's movies the male-female relationship is, at best, romantically perfunctory and without much in the way of even an implied future. Nearly all of his characters are much more deeply disaffected than the kind of classic loners Hawkes and others depicted in their films. In Eastwood's movies we are talking about a loneliness more radical, of a protagonist more rebelliously withdrawn, than anyone has offered us as the hero of movies intended for a popular audience. We are also speaking of a brutal frankness and a sense that chance and a human unreliability play in anyone's destiny, a sense that there is not much distance between heroism and victimisation.

21. What are we told about male bonding in Eastwood's films?
- It has established new territory for actors.
 - It has been particularly well handled.
 - It is occasionally confusing.
 - It is noticeably absent.
22. According to the writer, how do Eastwood's heroes compare with those of Hawkes and his followers?
- They are more isolated.
 - They are more politically motivated.
 - They are intended to be unlikeable.
 - They are always in control.

POP MUSIC

It seems that the music business is in a dormant period at the moment. Pop music, more than film or literature, or even art, has a great reluctance to differentiate the shock of the new from artistic excellence. This dormant period is the most protracted since the emergence of rock'n'roll. Pundits are confident that something will come along to shake things up, claiming it always does. But what if every known boundary has already been pushed? And what if, as a result of our determination to keep our ears to the ground for the rumble of revolution, we're dismissing the most significant music of our time?

In my opinion, the best album of the year is one that crept into the stores a couple of months ago, almost unannounced and apparently unloved by the music business tastemakers. It doesn't strong-arm its listener with technology or exploit the world situation. Instead, it explores the familiar and massages the heartstrings. In fact, it's the sort of record that makes you wonder what the point of 'groundbreaking' is. After all, it's not often that 'groundbreaking' gets you singing along in the car and feeling positive about the day ahead, is it?

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>23. According to the writer, pop music experts may currently be</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. overestimating the artistic value of new music. b. lacking in sensitivity to changes taking place in pop music. c. applying the wrong criteria in evaluating new music. d. overstating the lack of variety in pop music. | <p>24. What impresses the writer about the new album he mentions?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. its originality b. its technical quality c. its emotional impact d. its deeper message |
|---|--|

SOAP OR DRAMA?

*There is a new series on TV which somewhat puzzles me. When is a soap a soap, and a drama a drama? A soap opera differs from other forms of drama in the sense that it does not really possess a beginning, a middle and an end, only a middle. A soap is not about stories, it is about episodes. The flow is the most important element. When, therefore, a writer brings a soap opera mentality to the sphere of serious drama, you end up with something like *London Beat*, which is so interested in constructing episodes that it forgets to give us a story. It stars Glenda Halspenny as police superintendent Frances Raines, a caring mother and conscientious officer who is struggling to settle back in after having her second baby. The programme seems to care more about motion than it does about meaning. After three short scenes, where we meet the three characters whose stories will converge at some later stage, the action shifts robotically back and forth from place to place and from theme to theme. Keeping several plot lines in a play is not an easy feat, but when it becomes an end in itself it makes for very tiresome television.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>25. According to the writer, a soap opera is unlike other forms of drama because it needs to</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. adhere to certain conventions. b. reflect the mentality of its viewers. c. disguise an ongoing narrative. d. maintain a certain momentum. | <p>26. What aspect of <i>London Beat</i> does the writer criticise?</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. its varied settings b. its weak characterisation c. its predictable subject matter d. its tedious structure |
|---|---|



EXTRA CPE EXAM PRACTICE

READING

PART 3

You are going to read an extract from a novel. Seven paragraphs have been removed from the extract. Choose from the paragraphs A-H the one which fits each gap (27-33). There is one extra paragraph which you do not need to use.

EVENING GAMES

Despite the extraordinary heat, the children wanted to be let out into the garden, where they began their game of hide-and-seek. The sun glared down and the veranda was like a furnace. In the game, Shiv was 'it'. All the other children had sprinted away, their brown legs flashing through the dusty shrubs, scrambling up brick walls and hiding behind hedges. Even the squirrels had disappeared. Suddenly Manu reappeared, as if he had dropped out of an invisible cloud or from a bird's claw.

27

Shiv turned just in time to see him, and charged off in pursuit with such a blood-curdling yell that Manu stumbled over the hosepipe, fell into its rubber coils and lay there, the tears rolling down his face. 'I won't be it – you have to find them all.'

28

Ravi panicked. He felt as if all eyes were on him as he sat on an upturned flowerpot behind the garage. Where could he possibly hide? Then he remembered the shed with the big green door. There was a gap by the hinges just large enough for dogs and, possibly, Ravi to slip through. He had never before dared to enter such a dark and depressing place, but as Shiv got nearer, Ravi suddenly slipped through the crack and was gone.

29

Ravi shook, then shivered with delight, with self-congratulation. Also with fear. It was dark and spooky in the shed, with almost no light. He crouched down low, hugging his knees, so as not to bump into anything. Shiv's footsteps had disappeared and there was now complete silence.

30

It would be evening soon. Their parents would come and sit out on the lawn in cane basket chairs and watch them as they tore around. Then he heard one of the girls scream as Shiv bore down on her. There was the sound of a crash, and then accusing shouts of 'I touched home! You did not! Liar', and then all fell silent once again. Ravi decided to stay where he was a bit longer. What fun if they were all found and caught – he alone left unconquered!

31

He hugged his knees together and smiled to himself almost shyly at the thought of such laurels. Now and then he went to the door and listened. Nothing. Was the game over? Then it occurred to him that he could have slipped out long ago, dashed across the yard and touched home. It was necessary to do that to win.

32

With a whimper he burst through the crack and stumbled across the shadowy yard. 'Shiv didn't find me – I won I won!' he bawled, shaking his head. It took them a minute to grasp what he was saying. Shiv had found all the others long ago. They had started on a different game. 'Don't be a fool,' Shiv said roughly, pushing him aside. 'If you want to play, stand at the end of the line.'

33

He stepped a few feet back from the others and lay down full length on the lawn, crushing his face into the grass, no longer crying, silenced by a terrible sense of insignificance.



A

He contemplated slipping out, wondering if it would not be better to be captured by Shiv, as long as he could be back with his family and friends and the free open spaces of the garden.

B

He would not do it – he would not be included. He had wanted victory and triumph. But he had been forgotten, left out and he would not join them now. He felt his heart go heavy and ache inside him unbearably.

C

He laughed aloud at his own temerity. Shiv stood silent with his hands on his hips, before charging off only to find yellow dust, nothing else. Snarling, he bent down to pick up a stick and whacked it against a wall before striding off.

D

He had never known that sensation. Nothing more wonderful had ever happened to him than being taken out by an uncle and bought a whole slab of chocolate. To defeat Shiv – that conceited football champion – and to be the winner in a circle of older, bigger, luckier children – that would be thrilling beyond imagination.

E

He stood still for a moment in the centre of the yellow lawn, chewing his finger and near to tears as he heard Shiv calling out, with his head pressed against the wall. The younger child then made off in panic, half of him wanting to fly north, the other half advising south.

F

He had forgotten. He had only remembered the part of hiding and trying to elude the seeker. He had done this so successfully, his success had occupied him so wholly that he had quite forgotten that success had to be clinched by that final dash to victory.

G

He was also aware of less definable, less recognisable horrors. What might there not be to touch him and feel him as he stood there? He jumped when he heard Shiv's voice – then quickly he felt almost relieved. It made him feel protected.

H

'Idiot,' Shiv said, kicking him with his toe. 'You're dead,' he said with satisfaction, licking the beads of perspiration off his upper lip, and then stalked off in search of worthier prey, whistling so that the hidiers should hear and tremble.



EXTRA CPE EXAM PRACTICE

READING

PART 4

You are going to read a newspaper article about writers. For questions 34-40, choose the best answer (A, B, C or D) which you think fits best according to the text.

FAILURE IN THE WORLD OF WRITING

When I went to the Booker Prize for Literature, it came as an awful realisation that a sad twilight has settled on contemporary culture. I found that this year was a year of levelling mediocrity for the British novel. You might have thought otherwise, listening to publishers complain about the exclusion of their own great works from the shortlist and boast of the enduring vitality of British fiction. Actually, we shouldn't be surprised by such nonsense; we live in an age of cultural inflation.

The most guilty are the publishers. Overpraising limited talent is a prerequisite of their role and their judgements are inseparable from the grime of commerce; they must sell the unending supply of books. And how they love to issue books - more than 100,000 in Britain last year. This leads to a kind of hysteria of exaggeration, damaging to both writer and reader, but especially to the writer whose work enters the world weighed down with unreasonable expectations.

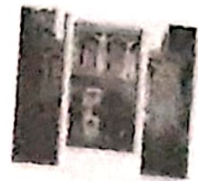
The entries displayed a narrowness of vision, a cultural fatigue, a suspicion of the present and a corresponding flight into the past. Few writers seek to invent their own idiom or to submerge themselves utterly in the world around them. Time after time, gloomy themes involving human suffering and social upheaval are imposed on a text in an attempt to force a spurious moral validation which does not emerge organically. Returning to a buried past to unearth something significantly repressed about oneself or one's society has become so overused as to make it a tiresome gimmick.

This inability to picture ourselves in the present and near future, and dwelling on what has been called that lingering backward glance to what can never be recovered, is echoed in the preponderance of historical novels published this autumn. These novels diligently recycle many of the same themes and preoccupations: the instability of the past, the centrality of memory, the unreliability of historical narrative, the reclamation of lost lives. The present is not a vacuum; it will always carry the imprint of the past. Yet, reading these texts, with their assured, over-beautified literary prose and detailed costume drama, one wonders what lies behind this turning away from the defining particulars of our time. What is it about contemporary reality that so many writers are unwilling to document in fiction?

It would be unfair to say, however, that there is nothing interesting about British fiction; this would be to slip crudely into our fondness for cultural self-denigration. It is rather that talent has become generalised and spread out. Talking to a well-known author the other day, she remarked that she could name some forty contemporary British writers of distinction, although that might depend on what one means by distinction. There is no single commanding presence around where younger writers can gather and learn.

It seems that too many novelists have lost confidence in the ordinary and the local. They have stopped listening to the rough imprecision and strange comedy of ordinary speech. This partly explains the continuing appeal of magic realism, a genre in which anything is permissible. This can be liberating - people can fly, death is never final - but it can also be a burden because extravagance is encouraged and a preposterousness of subject and tone is indulged. By failing to animate genuine people in a real society, characters become cartoons; they are flattened out and compressed into two or three cliché gestures, which relieves the writer of the endlessly difficult task of representing how people actually talk, think and interact with one another.

For J G Ballard, one of the most consistently innovative of the older generation of writers, the problem is mainly to do with the emergence of what he calls career novelists, writers who travel the world on large grants and pontificate at literary festivals. Ballard says, 'Many writers I meet approach the career of writing in the same way as solicitors or accountants. They work towards establishing themselves as a successful literary professional; they accept the rules of the game and judge themselves by yardsticks laid down by their peers, fitting neatly into the professional world of publishing, reviewing, or literary conferences and festivals, of signings and of sitting on committees.' As Ballard points out, the best work tends to be produced by mavericks, independent spirits answerable to no one.



34. In the first paragraph, the writer suggests that publishers
 - a. complain about the diminishing amount of true literary talent.
 - b. feel there is a bias in the selections made for literary competitions.
 - c. have little faith in their products.
 - d. have a shared preference for fiction writing.
35. According to the writer, current approaches to publication mean that some authors
 - a. achieve too much renown for a work before it is published.
 - b. become over-productive once they have been published.
 - c. expect too high a level of support from their publishers.
 - d. are pushed too hard to produce new work by their publishers.
36. Which of the following does the writer criticise in this year's entries?
 - a. the factual inaccuracies
 - b. the use of sensitive themes
 - c. the shortage of original ideas
 - d. the apparent lack of morality
37. When discussing modern historical fiction, the writer
 - a. reveals his disinclination to read such works.
 - b. admits that history has some contemporary significance.
 - c. regrets the publicity given to certain new publications.
 - d. explains the human preoccupation with past events and circumstances.
38. What point is the writer making about British fiction in the fifth paragraph?
 - a. It is too introspective.
 - b. There is inadequate training for new authors.
 - c. It lacks an outstanding figure.
 - d. Even good writers can make poor judgements.
39. Ultimately, the writer feels that modern authors have
 - a. tackled popular subjects and themes badly.
 - b. been influenced too much by friends in writing.
 - c. been influenced too much by expectations of readers.
 - d. avoided any attempt at proper characterisation.
40. According to J G Ballard, literary excellence is generally the result of
 - a. professional autonomy.
 - b. grim determination.
 - c. constant self-evaluation.
 - d. financial hardship.

EXTRA CPE EXAM PRACTICE

USE OF ENGLISH

PART 1

For questions 1-15, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only **one** word in each space.

GETTING TO SLEEP

There is nothing like a good night's sleep. It can provide you (0)..... a much needed boost for work the next day. As a general (1)....., people who sleep well enjoy better concentration levels and are (2)..... likely to be bad-tempered and irritable than those who (3)..... the night tossing and turning. In fact, not getting a good night's sleep is bad for your health. Sleep deprivation means that it (4)..... the body a greater length of time to heal itself and to shake (5)..... any minor ailments such as coughs and colds. Smokers have difficulty falling asleep, often spending over an hour trying to drop off, (6)..... to the average of 15 minutes for a non-smoker. Various suggestions have been (7)..... forward to help people understand how the problem of sleep can be (8)..... with. For people who regularly (9)..... sleeping difficult, eating something easily digestible before going to bed can help. People should refrain (10)..... caffeine in the late evening and opt (11)..... a milky drink rather than cola, coffee or tea. However, (12)....., after 20 minutes in bed, you are still unable to sleep, the best (13)..... to do is to (14)..... up any idea of sleeping, and read a book for half an hour (15)..... so before trying again.

For questions 16-25, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.

PART 2

NEW PHOTOGRAPHIC EXHIBITION

We are used to surprising and unusual photographs from Ted Harrington, but at this year's exhibition there is a truly (0)..... *extraordinary*..... picture that shows the skin of a courgette. Now, a courgette you would assume is a pretty harmless vegetable, but in this photo it looks (16)..... scary. It seems Ted's (17)..... project is to make us look at things differently. He calls it an (18)....., one which he enjoys and wants other people to share.

ORDINARY

POSITIVE

PERSON

INDULGE

Many of these photos are close-ups, and the plants are barely (19)..... Some of them have obvious flaws and (20)....., but that's all part of the exhibition. Ted is concerned (21)..... with texture, form and colour.

RECOGNISE

PERFECT

PRIME

All of the photos were taken outside and, indeed, some of the lighting effects would have been extremely (22)..... to reproduce in a studio.

CHALLENGE

And however strange the images look, he swears that they haven't been subjected to digital (23).....

MANIPULATE

Consequently, all the (24)..... seen in the photos is that seen in nature.

WEIRD

So if a flower looks like something from (25)..... space, that's what it really looks like in the garden.

OUT

PAPER 1 & PAPER 3

PART 3

For questions 26-31, think of **one** word only which can be used appropriately in all the three sentences.

26. I hope you're not going to make a big of Mary's rudeness.
Did you see that special of stamps yesterday?
We must concentrate on the of the homeless.
27. There's a much better of cheeses in that little shop.
I had no but to fire them both.
Gina is the obvious for captain of the team.
28. Please write your name in the provided.
The huge table took up most of the in the kitchen.
He did very well in such a short of time.
29. You should yourself lucky that you've got a job.
You can on Betty. She's totally reliable.
Please me out if the trip involves spending lots of money.
30. Has anyone ever climbed the north of that mountain?
His betrayed no emotion at all when sentence was passed.
On the of it, I think we must admit defeat.
31. There's a lovely from the hotel balcony.
In my , there's not much to be done.
Finally, the port of Dover came into

PART 4

For questions 32-39, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. **Do not change the word given.** You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

32. He doesn't look like his brother at all.
bears
He to his brother at all.
33. It is quite obvious that he's doing no work whatsoever.
escaping
There's he's doing no work whatsoever.
34. Jade has accepted the fact that she'll never become a doctor.
terms
Jade that she'll never become a doctor.
35. Sam gave the impression he was going to faint.
if
Sam he was going to faint.
36. Whatever you do, don't mention the subject of his accident.
up
Whatever you do, of his accident.
37. David promised to help the kids.
word
David he would help the kids.
38. The only thing I can do is to tell Monica everything.
alternative
I to tell Monica everything.
39. It was the first time Lenny had used a computer.
previous
Lenny a computer.



USE OF ENGLISH

PART 5

For questions 40-44, read the following texts on robots. For questions 40-43, answer with a word or a short phrase. You do not need to write complete sentences. For question 44, write a summary according to the instructions given.

There have been many science fiction predictions, but disappointingly few have materialised. Perhaps one of the most disappointing is the lack of good robot servants. Yet, while the arrival of robots to cater for our every whim remains several years in the future, more basic robots are entering our lives, from lawn mowers and vacuum cleaners to the two-legged robots emerging from universities around the world.

Computer power is leaping ahead every year and researchers are busy developing hands, feet, eyes and ears that will one day be stitched together to make a functioning humanoid.

Not every scientist is happy about this; one has even warned it could mean the demise of the human race. However, most scientists guarantee that they will be able to keep their mechanical creations in check and believe that if these robots are ever to integrate fully into our world, they will need to have a human form and to relate benignly to humans.

A two-legged robot has been produced which can change direction and shift its centre of gravity while maintaining steady balance. It walks, climbs stairs, negotiates corners and turns out the lights. A robot which can change its facial expressions and can respond to human emotions has even been produced. If humans engage with them, then it looks happy; if they ignore it, it goes looking for something more interesting to do.

40. Explain in your own words what the writer means by 'good robot servants' in this context.

41. Which five-word phrase in this text anticipates the idea of mankind's 'own species doom' in the last line of the SECOND text?

It was fairly frightening. I watched as a predatory robot seized the electronic heart of another and whirled off to a computerised mate to 'breed'. This was an exhibition being staged by the head of a creative robotics unit. This behaviour represented the survival of the fittest. In the near future, the public will be able to watch as predators and prey do battle for limited supplies of electronic power.

These experiments are designed to develop robotic 'thinking', which will allow machines to adapt and survive in extreme conditions. A robot's success will depend on its ability to store the lessons of victory and defeat and learn from the experiences. The most successful will be bred. That involves taking half of each machine's set of 'artificial genes' – actually electronic chips which record the robot's actions – and joining them together. These will then be installed in a new robot and the resulting composite machine tested in further struggles.

In the demonstrations, smaller solar-powered robots, having topped up their energy levels under a powerful lamp, strove to evade larger, predator robots. The predators were fitted with power-draining units but, if defeated in their attempts to drain power from their victims, they died of electronic starvation. Eventually, the public will be encouraged to enter into the spirit of competition by cheering on their favourites, although there is a danger that humans will be cheering on their own species' doom.

42. In your own words, describe what is referred to by 'This behaviour' in line 3

43. Which word used later in the text means the same as the word 'prey' in line 4?



44. In a paragraph of 50 – 70 words, summarise **in your own words as far as possible** the ways in which, according to the writers of both paragraphs, scientists are trying to make their robots like humans.

NOTES